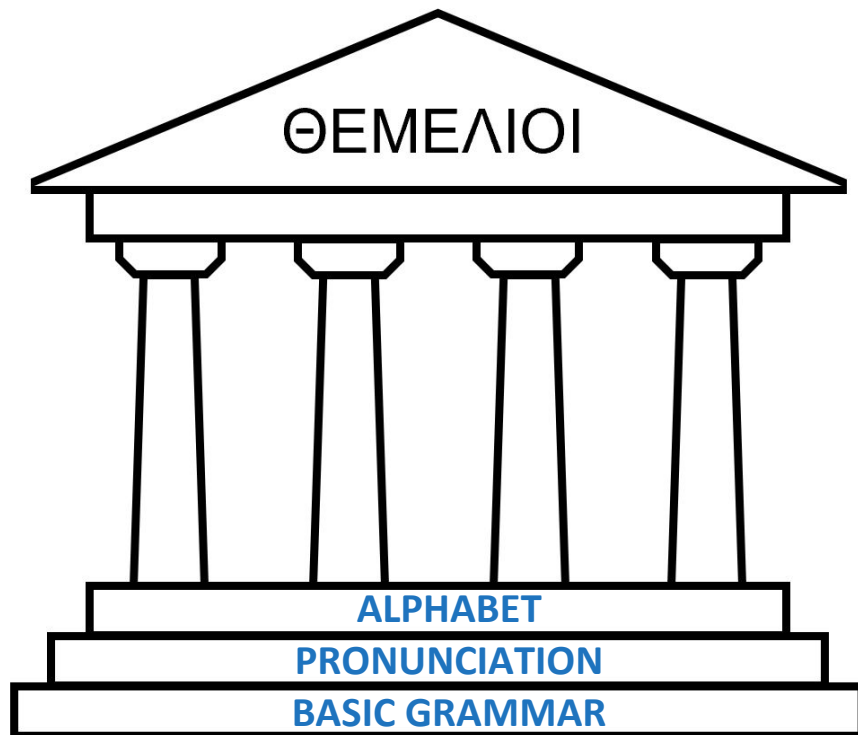


FOUNDATIONS of Koine Greek



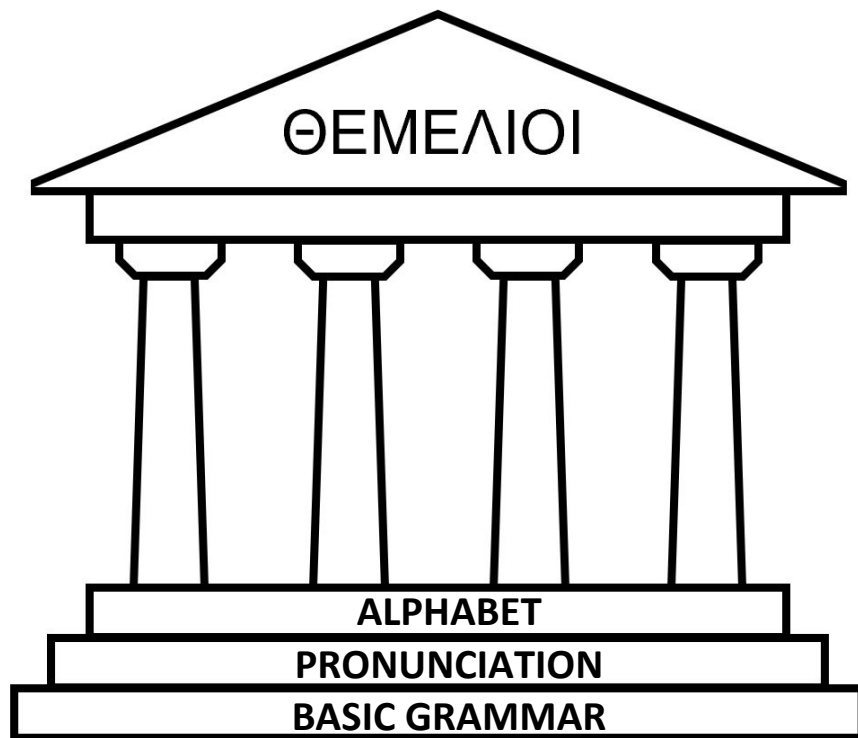
STUDENT MANUAL

An introductory course for Koine Greek that focuses on
pronouncing and writing the Greek alphabet and Greek words.
Also introduces basic Greek grammar concepts.

Includes Practice Exercises for a 14 Week Course
Includes Online Audio and Video Resources

By Matthew Jones

FOUNDATIONS of Koine Greek



STUDENT MANUAL

An introductory course for Koine Greek that focuses on pronouncing and writing the Greek alphabet and Greek words.
Also introduces basic Greek grammar concepts.

Includes Practice Exercises for a 14 Week Course
Includes Online Audio and Video Resources

By Matthew Jones

Foundations of Koine Greek Student Manual

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones
koinefoundations@gmail.com

Where noted, purchaser is granted permission to photocopy worksheets
for personal study or homeschool use.

The font used for Greek characters throughout this work is the extended set of characters
of the Arial font that are accessed using a Greek Polytonic Keyboard.

Throughout this work, scripture translations are by the author and are not
quotations from any copyrighted Bible version or translation.

The Greek text of the New Testament used throughout this work is from the Greek New Testament,
edited by Eberhard Nestle (H KAINH ΔΙΑΘΗΚΗ Text with Critical Apparatus, by Eberhard Nestle),
published in 1904 by the British and Foreign Bible Society. This work is in the public domain worldwide
and is free of known copyright restrictions.

The web addresses referenced in this work were live and correct
at the time this workbook was published but are subject to change.

Image Credits

Cover Art: Artwork by the author.

Page 5: Map of the Aegean Sea area: Pitichinaccio / Public Domain / Wikimedia Commons.

Page 6: Photo of Obadiah manuscript on papyrus: Reproduction and photo by the author.

Page 23: Photo of 2 Thessalonians 1:1-2 on papyrus: Reproduction and photo by the author.

Page 28: Image of writing tablet: Image courtesy of the British Library from its digital collections.
British Library / CC0 1.0 / Public Domain.

Page 28: Photo of pottery art: Pottery Fan / CC BY-SA 3.0 <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0>

Page 39: Clipart: Artist <https://pixabay.com/users/clker-free-vector-images-3736>.

Page 42: Photo of Greek epistle: Reproduction and photo by the author.

Page 68: Photo: Stock image from Microsoft 365 subscriber library.

Page 110: Fish Symbol and Wheel Illustration: Artwork by the author.

Page 122: Photo of Haggai 2:12 on papyrus: Reproduction and photo by the author.

Page 123: Photo: Stock image from Microsoft 365 subscriber library.

Page 124: Photo: Stock image from Microsoft 365 subscriber library.

Page 147: Clipart: Public domain at <http://www.clipartden.com> and <https://www.clipartguide.com>.

Page 152: Photo: Stock image from Microsoft 365 subscriber library.

Page 162: Clipart: Public domain (CC0 1.0) at <https://openclipart.org>.

Page 166: Photo: Stock image from Microsoft 365 subscriber library.

Page 176: Clipart: Public domain (CC0 1.0) at <https://publicdomainvectors.org>.

Page 180: Clipart: Artist <https://pixabay.com/users/jozefm84-10215106>.

Contents

Περιεχόμενα

Notes to the Homeschool Teacher or Self-Learner	1
A. Introduction	
B. Purpose	
C. Different Ways to Pronounce Greek	
D. Pronunciation Symbols	
E. Notes about this Course	
F. How to Use the Online Resources	
G. Outcomes	
H. Grades	
Lesson 1 / Μάθημα Έν	5
1.1 Introduction / Where to Begin	
1.2 A Brief History of the Greek Language	
1.3 The Greek Alphabet	
1.4 Alphabet Flash Cards	
1.5 The Letters Αα, Ββ, Ωω	
1.6 Vocabulary – Lesson 1	
1.7 Vocabulary Cards	
1.8 Writing Greek Letters	
1.9 Learning Expectations – Alphabet	
1.10 Learning Expectations – Vocabulary Words	
1.11 Something Extra – What Makes Greek Easy to Pronounce	
Lesson 2 / Μάθημα Δύο	23
2.1 Upper-Case and Lower-Case Letters	
2.2 Accent Marks	
2.3 Breathing Marks	
2.4 The Letters Γγ, Δδ, Εε	
2.5 Vocabulary – Lesson 2	
2.6 Something Extra – Pinakidion and Grapheion	
Lesson 3 / Μάθημα Τρία	39
3.1 Grammatical Gender	
3.2 The Article (“the”)	
3.3 The Letters Ζζ, Ηη, Θθ	
3.4 Vocabulary – Lesson 3	
3.5 Something Extra – What is the New Testament?	
Lesson 4 / Μάθημα Τέσσερα	53
4.1 The Letters Ιι, Κκ, Λλ	
4.2 Vowel Digraphs αι and ει	
4.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 4	
4.4 Something Extra – How Many Words are in the Greek New Testament?	

Lesson 5 / Μάθημα Πέντε	67
5.1 The Letters Μμ, Νν, Ξξ	
5.2 Other Sounds for Gamma (Γγ)	
5.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 5	
5.4 Something Extra – Long Greek Words	
5.5 Vocabulary Word Search	
Lesson 6 / Μάθημα Έξι	81
6.1 The Letters Οο, Ππ, Ρρ	
6.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 6	
Lesson 7 / Μάθημα Έπτά	93
7.1 The Letters Σς, Ττ, Υυ	
7.2 More About Upsilon (Vowel Combinations αυ, ευ, and ηυ)	
7.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 7	
7.4 Something Extra – Why Do Pi and Tav Have Alternate Sounds?	
Lesson 8 / Μάθημα Όκτώ	107
8.1 The Letters Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ	
8.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 8	
8.3 Iota Subscript	
8.4 Something Extra - The Fish Symbol	
Lesson 9 / Μάθημα Έννέα	121
9.1 Vowel Digraphs οι and ου	
9.2 Punctuation Marks	
9.3 Koine Greetings	
9.4 Vocabulary – Lesson 9	
9.5 Something Extra – How Do We Know How Koine Greek Was Pronounced?	
Lesson 10 / Μάθημα Δέκα	135
10.1 Another Sound for Gamma (Γγ)	
10.2 The Sound of υι	
10.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 10	
10.4 How to Say “Yes” and “No”	
10.5 Something Extra - Numbers	
Lesson 11 / Μάθημα Ένδεκα	147
11.1 Greek is an Inflected Language	
11.2 Introduction to Greek Verbs and the Present Active Tense	
11.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 11	
11.4 Something Extra – How are you?	
Lesson 12 / Μάθημα Δώδεκα	161
12.1 Introduction to Greek Nouns and Nouns of the Second Declension	
12.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 12	
12.3 Something Extra – Lions and Tigers and Bears. Oh my!	

Lesson 13 / Μάθημα Δεκατρία.....	175
13.1 Nouns of the First Declension	
13.2 More About the Article (“the”)	
13.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 13	
13.4 Something Extra – The Family	
Lesson 14 / Μάθημα Δεκατέσσαρα	189
14.1 Dividing Words into Syllables	
14.2 Diacritical Marks	
14.3 Congratulations!	
Answer Key / Λύσεις.....	197
Lessons 1 to 14 Answer Keys	
Letters and Sounds	
Alphabet	
Vocabulary / Λεξιλόγιο	227
Appendix / Παράρτημα.....	229
Master Table of the Koine Greek Alphabet	
Koine Greek Digraphs and Vowel Combinations	
The Koine Greek Alphabet Song	
Writing Practice Worksheet	
Alphabet Flash Cards	

Notes to the Homeschool Teacher or Self-Learner

A. Introduction

This course is designed for anyone who wants to learn the Koine Greek alphabet or needs to learn it in preparation for learning the Biblical Greek language. Koine Greek, also known as Biblical Greek and Hellenistic Greek, is the form of the Greek language used in the Septuagint, New Testament, and early Christian writings.

I believe that the most challenging and intimidating aspect of learning Greek is learning the Greek alphabet symbols and their sounds. A student's success in learning the alphabet will determine his or her success in being able to learn Greek grammar and effectively read, understand, and enjoy the language. Unfortunately, in most beginning Greek courses the alphabet is one lesson (usually the first). Then the student is expected to begin learning massive amounts of grammar and memorize dozens of paradigms and vocabulary words while also still struggling with learning the alphabet.

That was my first experience with Greek. I went through my first two semesters of Greek without really knowing what all the squiggly symbols were and how they sounded. That made it difficult to memorize vocabulary and learn Greek grammar. When I finally learned how to pronounce Greek, the language became much easier and fun!

B. Purpose

As its name implies, this course is designed to be a foundation for learning Koine Greek. Its purpose is to teach the student the Greek alphabet in preparation for taking a beginning Biblical Greek class. The focus is on pronunciation and writing skills.

C. Different Ways to Pronounce Greek

As with all languages, the Greek language has changed in pronunciation over the thousands of years it has been spoken. The way Plato spoke Greek is not the same as the way the Apostle Paul spoke Greek, and is not the same as that of a modern Greek speaker. There are several pronunciation systems used in Classical and Biblical Greek education. The major ones are:

- Classical Greek Pronunciation – This is the pronunciation system typically used for the study of Classical Greek.
- Erasmian \i-raz-mē-ən\ Pronunciation - Erasmian pronunciation is the system taught for Biblical Greek in most colleges and seminaries around the world. It was developed by Desiderius Erasmus in the 16th century. It is not how Greek sounded during the time that the New Testament was written during the first century. Though it is similar to the pronunciation of Classical Greek, at no time in the history of the Greek language was Greek actually pronounced this way. It is used for its pedagogical benefits because each Greek letter is assigned only one unique sound.
- Reconstructed Koine Pronunciation – This is a reconstruction of what Greek might have sounded like in the Koine period from about 300 B.C. to A.D. 300 based on historical research. The reconstruction focuses primarily on the pronunciation of the first three centuries A.D. – the period in which the New Testament and other important Christian documents were written. The Greek of this period is known as Koine Greek, Biblical Greek, or Hellenistic Greek.

- Modern Greek Pronunciation – Some teachers of Classical and Biblical Greek use modern Greek pronunciation. Obviously, this is not how Classical or Biblical Greek actually sounded, but it has the benefit of learning how to pronounce the modern, living language.

In order to learn Greek, you must decide which pronunciation system to use. Because this course is designed to prepare a student to eventually learn the Greek language of the New Testament period, a Reconstructed Koine Pronunciation system is taught. This will give the student an appreciation for what the New Testament may have sounded like when it was read aloud in church gatherings, and what early believers like the Apostle Paul sounded like when they taught and preached.

As noted above, Erasmian Pronunciation is used in most colleges and seminaries. Will that be a problem for the student using this course if they eventually pursue Biblical Greek in higher education? Not really. There are two reasons:

- The various pronunciation systems are similar, with the sound of vowels being the major difference. A student can easily adjust their pronunciation with a little practice.
- The newest Biblical Greek textbooks are offering both Erasmian and Reconstructed Koine Pronunciation options. Some professors are already switching to a Reconstructed Koine Pronunciation. So, no matter which pronunciation system a student learns now, they may still find themselves in a class in the future that uses a different pronunciation system.

The important thing is to choose a system and stick with it.

D. Pronunciation Symbols

To help the student learn the sound of each letter, two options are provided to illustrate the sound. The options are:

- **A simple English word** that contains the same sound as that of the Greek letter.
Examples: alpha (α) sounds like the **a** in **spa**
mu (μ) sounds like the **m** in **met**
- **Merriam-Webster Pronunciation Symbols** (MWPS). These are the standard pronunciation symbols used in the Merriam-Webster dictionary. You are probably familiar with these if you have studied English grammar. For a downloadable PDF document that explains the symbols and includes a one-page chart, go to:

<https://merriam-webster.com/assets/mw/static/pdf/help/guide-to-pronunciation.pdf>

They are also explained in any hardcopy edition of the Merriam-Webster dictionary.

Examples: alpha (α) sounds like \ä\
mu (μ) sounds like \m\

Important Note: Both of these pronunciation options are provided for each Greek letter. They represent the same exact sound for the Greek letter. Younger students should probably use the first option – a simple English word.

E. Notes About this Course

Lessons: This course consists of 14 lessons. Each lesson is designed for one week and consists of learning materials (reading assignments in this Student Manual, and audio and video files on the koinefoundations.com website) and five sets of Learning Exercises in this Student Manual.

Large tasks are always more easily done in smaller pieces. So, this course presents the Greek alphabet in groups of three letters along with some vocabulary words in each lesson. By lesson nine, the student will know how to say and write the alphabet. Then the lessons introduce basic Greek Grammar.

Learning Exercises: There are five sets of Learning Exercises per lesson designed to be used over five days. The Learning Exercises guide the student through the reading assignments and learning activities for each lesson. Begin each lesson with the Learning Exercises for Day 1. Each daily Learning Exercise will take between 15 to 45 minutes. However, the student will also need additional time throughout the day to memorize the alphabet and vocabulary words. Because language skills are acquired through repetition, some activities are repeated throughout the Learning Exercises.

The student is expected to complete all the reading assignments and learning activities listed in the Learning Exercises. The student should check off each activity they complete.

In a classroom or homeschool setting, the instructor/teacher should review the completed Learning Exercises to monitor the progress of the student, and to identify where the student needs help and encouragement. If the instructor, teacher or student feels that additional practice is needed, permission is granted to photocopy the worksheets for personal study or homeschool use where noted.

An activity marked with an asterisk has an Answer Key. See pages 197 to 222.

Counting activities have a small “check number” in parenthesis at the end of the activity which the student can use to check the answers for the activity. The number is the total count of all items in that activity. For example, if the student counts 15 items and the check number is 18, they missed three items and should redo the activity.

Audio / Video Files: It is difficult to learn a language if you can’t hear it spoken. Therefore, online audio and video files are available to help the learner and teacher at <https://koinefoundations.com>.

The audio and video files are part of the Learning Exercises, which direct the student to the assigned files. In addition, there are audio files marked throughout the Student Manual by this symbol:



The student can hear the Greek read or pronounced at <https://koinefoundations.com>.

Memorization: Most languages require some degree of memorization to gain proficiency. The learning activities are designed to work along with rote memorization to aid the student in learning the Greek alphabet.

Copywork: Homeschool teachers know the value of copywork, including developing fine motor skills, as an aid for memorization, and helping focus the student’s attention. As such, copywork is a part of the learning process throughout this course.

Scripture: This course is about learning the language that God used to reveal his plan of salvation through Jesus Christ. Therefore, examples from the Holy Bible are used throughout this course. Each vocabulary word is illustrated with an example of where the word is used in the New Testament.

F. How to Use the Online Resources

Online resources are available to help the learner and teacher at <https://koinefoundations.com>. Audio and video files are part of the Learning Exercises, which direct the student to the assigned files. Files are posted under one of these four pages:

- Alphabet / Ἀλφάβητος
- Vocabulary / Λεξιλόγιο
- Video / Βίντεο
- Hear It / Ἀκουσον

On the home page, click on the link button for that resource. Files are in order by lesson or page number.

G. Outcomes

In this course, the student will:

- Learn the names and sounds of the Greek alphabet letters and digraphs.
- Learn to recite the alphabet from Alpha to Omega.
- Learn to write the Greek letters.
- Learn at least 65 Greek words.
- Learn to pronounce Greek words and text.
- Learn some very basic grammar of the Koine Greek language.

Completing this course will prepare the student to take a beginning Biblical Greek course in a homeschool setting or in college. Even though this course focuses on the foundations, the student will cover material that is equivalent to the first four to five chapters in a typical college level textbook.

H. Grades

In a classroom or homeschool setting, the instructor may wish to evaluate the student's competence by assigning a course grade. A suggested course grading weight is:

- Completion of Learning Exercises: 70%
- Weekly Review Quizzes: 15%
- Class Participation: 15%

Weekly Review Quizzes are not included in this Student Manual. However, they can be downloaded at <https://koinefoundations.com>.

1.1 Introduction / Where to Begin

Χαῖρε! Hello!

In this course you will learn the Koine Greek alphabet so that you can pronounce and write the Greek letters and pronounce Greek words. You will also learn over 60 Greek words and a little beginning grammar. Completing this course will prepare you to take a beginning Biblical Greek course and start you on the journey of eventually being able to read the New Testament in the original Greek language in which it was written.

Begin each weekly lesson by turning to the Learning Exercises at the end of the lesson. There are five sets of Learning Exercises per lesson designed to be used over five days. The Learning Exercises will guide you through the reading assignments and learning activities for that lesson. If you have not already done so, begin Lesson 1 by turning to page 13.

1.2 A Brief History of the Greek Language

The Greek language has a long history. It has been spoken for at least the last 3500 years.

Its roots are among the people who migrated to the areas around the Aegean Sea. Possibly before 2000 B.C., they first settled in what is today called Greece. They later spread to the islands in the Aegean Sea, to Crete, to Cyprus (not on map), and to the seacoast of western Turkey.

Over time, all languages change in the way they are written and spoken. So, it is not surprising that Greek has changed over its 3500-year history. Scholars trace the changes in Greek by breaking its history into stages as shown in the table below.



Map of the Aegean Sea area.
Country names and borders are modern.

Stages of the Greek Language	Approximate Date Range
Mycenaean Greek	16 th to 12 th century BC
Greek Dark Ages	12 th to 8 th century BC
Ancient / Classical Greek	8 th to 4 th century BC
Hellenistic / Koine Greek	4 th century BC to 4 th century AD
Medieval Greek / Byzantine Greek	4 th to 15 th century AD
Modern Greek	15 th century AD to Present

Stages of the Greek Language.

You may be familiar with the Ancient / Classical Greek stage. That is when Greek culture flourished and Greek philosophers like Socrates (c. 470-399 B.C.), Plato (c. 428 - c. 348 B.C.) and Aristotle (384-322 B.C.) lived and wrote. Their works of philosophy, science, and poetry are still read and studied today.

The Greek you will learn in this course is from the Hellenistic / Koine Greek stage. This stage begins in the fourth century B.C., when King Philip of Macedon gained control over all of Greece through military conquest and diplomacy. To unify his power, he established the dialect of Greek called Attic Greek as the language of His empire.

When he was assassinated in 336 B.C., his son Alexander became king at age 20. You know him as Alexander the Great. Over the next 13 years he conquered and carved out the largest empire of the ancient world that stretched 3000 miles from Greece to India.

Alexander had been tutored by the Greek philosopher Aristotle, which instilled in him a love for all things Greek. Through his conquests, he spread Classical Greek culture and the Greek language. Greek became the international language of commerce and government throughout his empire

But over time Greek changed into a simpler language as it bumped up against other cultures and other languages. It became a common language used by everyday people, not just by merchants and government officials. Scholars today call it Koine Greek. "Koine" (κοινή) is the Greek word that means "common." This Koine or Common Greek language would remain the standard international language for at least four centuries, even after Latin speaking Rome conquered the Greek empire.

This common language had an uncommon impact on the religious lives of Jews and Christians. The Hebrew Bible (what Christians call the Old Testament) was translated into Greek starting around 250 B.C. Many Jews no longer understood Hebrew, the original language of the Hebrew Bible. But this Greek translation, called the **Septuagint**, gave them access to the Scriptures. This Greek translation was also the primary version of the Old Testament used by the early Christians.

Another impact was that Koine Greek was the language of the New Testament. Even though Rome ruled the world during the time of Jesus, and Latin was the official language of the empire, the New Testament was written in Koine Greek. This made it accessible to everyone in the empire because they shared this common language.

Koine Greek was spoken in Palestine during the earthly ministry of Jesus. His primary language was Aramaic, but he also spoke Koine Greek. His brothers, James and Jude, both wrote books of the New Testament that are written in an excellent style of Koine Greek.



The Septuagint book of Obadiah being written in Greek on papyrus.

This class focuses on teaching you to pronounce and write the alphabet of Koine Greek - the Greek of the Old Testament Septuagint, the New Testament, and many early Christian writings. This class will start you on the journey of eventually being able to read the New Testament in the original Koine Greek language in which it was written.

1.3 The Greek Alphabet ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς Ἀλφάβητος

Name	Upper Case	Lower Case
alpha	A	α
beta	B	β
gamma	Γ	γ
delta	Δ	δ
epsilon	E	ε
zeta	Z	ζ
eta	H	η
theta	Θ	θ
iota	I	ι
kappa	K	κ
lambda	Λ	λ
mu	M	μ
nu	N	ν
xi	Ξ	ξ
omicron	O	ο
pi	Π	π
rho	Ρ	ρ
sigma	Σ	σ ζ
tau	Τ	τ
upsilon	Υ	υ
phi	Φ	φ
chi	Χ	χ
psi	Ψ	ψ
omega	Ω	ω

The Greek Alphabet.

This Greek alphabet first appeared in the eighth century B.C. and underwent changes over the next 400 years. Several versions developed in the areas around the Aegean Sea. But in 403 B.C. in Athens, one version was officially adopted as the standard alphabet. Within 100 years it replaced all other versions of the alphabet in the Greek-speaking world. This official alphabet consisted of the upper-case letters which are still used today, over 2400 years later! The lower case letters gradually developed during the Byzantine period.

Learning the alphabet is not hard. Some of the Greek letters look and sound like the English alphabet letters¹ such as alpha (A/α), epsilon (E/ε), iota (I/ι), kappa (K/κ), omicron (O/o), and tau (T/τ). You might know some of the letters from math class, like delta (Δ) and pi (π). Once you know the sound of each letter, you can pronounce any word in Koine Greek, even if you do not know what it means.

- There are 24 letters in the alphabet.
- There are 7 vowels (yellow highlight). Notice that some look similar to English vowels.

Greek Vowels: α ε η ι ο υ ω

English Vowels: a e ē i o u ō

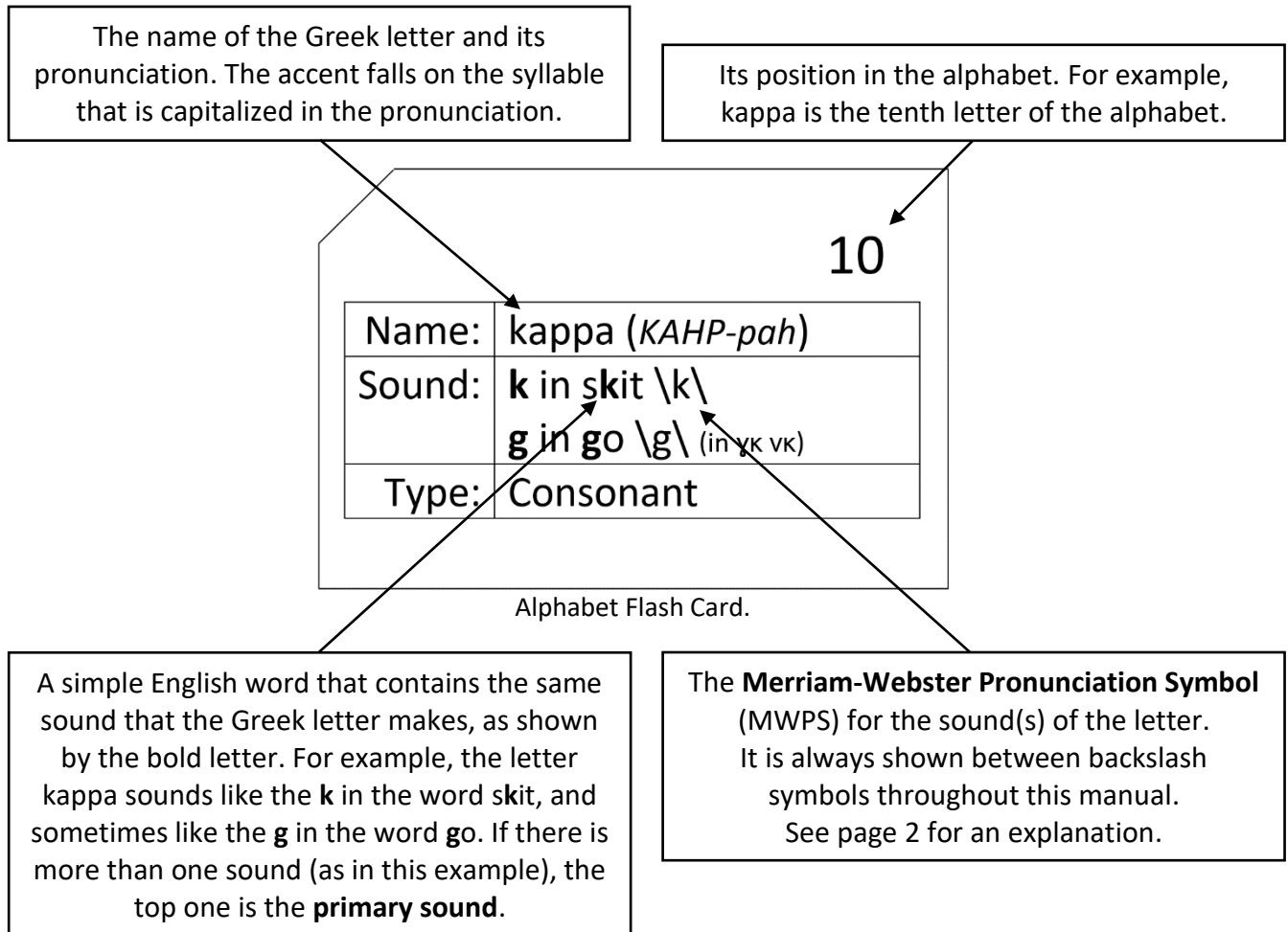
- The lower-case sigma has two forms (blue highlight). The ζ form is called a “final sigma” and is used only at the end of a word.
- Many of the upper-case forms look similar to their lower-case forms but are used infrequently in modern printed texts.
- Every letter has a name.
- Every name begins with that letter – alpha begins with an alpha, beta begins with a beta, etc.
- That beginning letter has the primary sound of the letter. When you say the name correctly, you will hear the sound the letter makes in words.
- You will learn the names as they are pronounced in Koine Greek, not in modern English. In this course you will always use the Greek name of the letter.

¹The set of alphabet symbols used in the English alphabet is called the Latin Script or Roman Script.

1.4 Alphabet Flash Cards

Alphabet flash cards are a useful aid to learn and review the alphabet. An **Alphabet Flash Card Master** is included in this manual on pages 233 to 238. You will make flash cards from this master following the instructions in the Lesson 1 / Day 2 Learning Exercises.

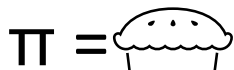
Each Alphabet Card has the same information on the reverse side as illustrated below.



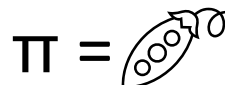
It is not necessary for you to memorize or understand the MWPS. This is an aid for getting the sound of the letter correct. You can also get the sound from the simple English word that is provided as an example. If you are learning phonetics, the MWPS might be helpful in reinforcing that material.

Keep in mind that you are learning the Koine names of the Greek letters. The names might be pronounced in a different way in modern English. For example:

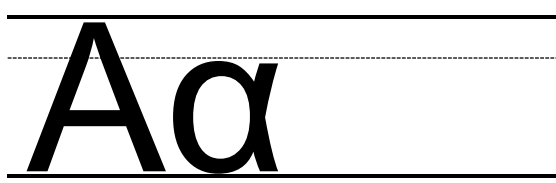
In math class pronounce π like apple pie.



In this course pronounce π like sweet pea.

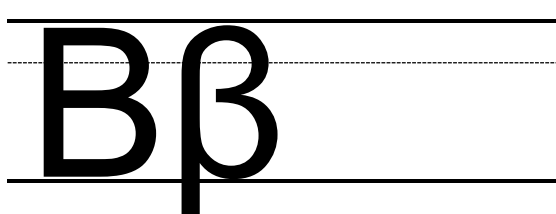


1.5 The Letters Αα, Ββ, Ωω Τὰ Γράμματα Αα, Ββ, Ωω

	Name:	alpha (<i>AHL-fah</i>)
	Sound:	a in spa \ä\
	Type:	Vowel

Alpha is the first letter of the Greek alphabet. It is very similar in appearance to the upper-case and lower-case A/a in the English alphabet.

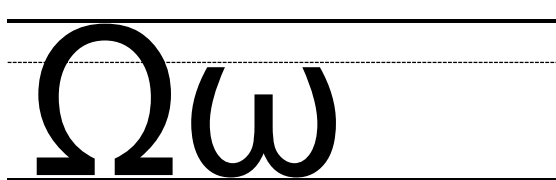
Alpha always sounds like the **a** in **spa**.

	Name:	beta (<i>VAY-tah</i>)
	Sound:	v in vet \v\
	Type:	Consonant

Beta is similar in appearance to the upper-case and lower-case B/b in the English alphabet.

However, Beta sounds like the **v** in **vet**. Do not pronounce it like the B/b in the English alphabet.

Note that the English word “alphabet” comes from the first two letters of the Greek alphabet:
Alpha + Beta → alphabet.

	Name:	omega (<i>oh-MEH-ghah</i>)
	Sound:	o in go \ō\
	Type:	Vowel

Omega is the last letter of the Greek alphabet. The dictionary form (lemma¹) of many Greek verbs ends in Omega. Not surprisingly, they are called Omega Verbs. Therefore, Omega is introduced now, out of order, so that you can learn verbs early in this course.

Do not confuse the lower-case Omega with the English letter W/w. They have nothing in common. Always write the lower-case Omega with rounded bottoms, not pointed like the English lower-case w.

Omega always sounds like the **o** in **go**.

Two of the letters in this lesson, Alpha and Omega, make up an important title for God. In The Revelation to John (22:13) in the New Testament, God says:

I am the **Alpha** and the **Omega**,
The First and the Last,
The Beginning and the End.

¹Lemma is the form of a word under which it is listed in a dictionary or lexicon.

1.6 Vocabulary – Lesson 1

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Έν

In each lesson you will be assigned several Greek words to memorize. The words will use only the letters you have learned so far. Learning words is a helpful way to learn the sounds of the alphabet letters.

In each lesson, the vocabulary list will show:

- The Greek word.
- A gloss, which is a brief meaning for the word. This is not a full dictionary definition, but rather a common way to translate the word into English.
- The part of speech.
- The frequency of the word in the New Testament (NT). The number shows approximately how many times the word is used. The number is based on information in the *Complete Vocabulary Guide to the Greek New Testament* by Warren C. Trenchard, Copyright 1992, 1998 by Warren C. Trenchard. Published by Zondervan.
- Notes with additional information about the word.
- A scripture verse as an example of how the word is used in the New Testament. Translations are the author's and are not quotations from any copyrighted Bible version or translation. Names and titles substituted for pronouns to clarify the meaning of the text are in italics.

There are very few words that can be spelled using just Αα, Ββ, and Ωω, but one is listed below.

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
1. ἄββᾱ	Father (used to address God)	Noun	3

Notes on the words:

1. ἄββᾱ - You may have heard this word pronounced \äb-bä\ (with the accent on the first syllable). But during the time of the New Testament, the Greek word was pronounced \äv-vä\ (with the accent on the last syllable). It is used in the New Testament as a way of addressing God the Father when praying. It is not the Greek word you would normally use for your human father. That is the word πατήρ \pä-tär\, which you will learn later. ἄββᾱ is a special word to address God as Father.

And *Jesus* was saying, "Abba, Father, all things are possible for you. Please remove this cup* from me. But don't act based on what I want, but on what you want. (Mark 14:36)

*A reference to Jesus' suffering and death and God the Father's wrath and judgment.

1.7 Vocabulary Cards

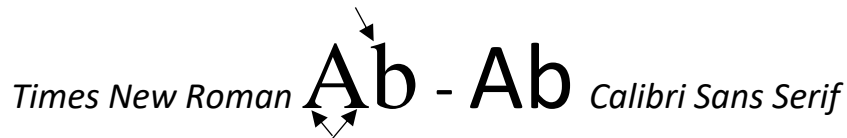
Flash cards are a great tool to help study and memorize vocabulary words. The student is expected to make flash cards as part of the Learning Exercises.

A critical key to learning vocabulary words is to say them aloud as you memorize them. Memorization is easier when you **see**, **hear**, and **say** the word.

1.8 Writing Greek Letters

Learning the Greek alphabet also includes learning to write the Greek letters.

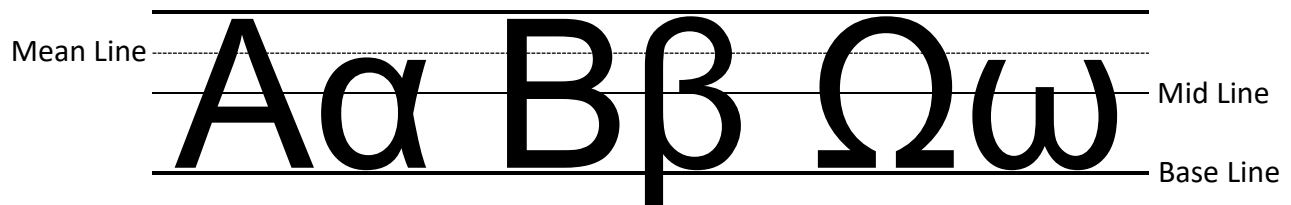
There is often a difference between printed letters in books and handwritten letters. Printed letters often contain **serifs** which are extra strokes added to the basic form of the letter, usually as decoration. For example, compare the common *Times New Roman* font (on the left) with the *Calibri Sans Serif* font (on the right) used in this book. The arrows point to serifs on the *Times New Roman* font.



When we hand write an upper-case A we don't include the feet as seen on the *Times New Roman* font, or the tail at the top of the lower-case b. You should hand write the Greek letters using simple strokes that don't include decorative serifs.

A few Greek letters have alternate ways of writing them. When this is the case, the alternate way will be presented, and you are free to choose.

Look closely at the letters below. Notice the dotted line (called the Mean Line) that is three quarters the distance from the bottom line (called the Base Line) to the top line. The Mean Line is a guide for writing lower-case Greek letters the proper size.



Worksheet exercises in the Learning Exercises provide instructions about how to write each Greek letter. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. Some upper-case Greek letters are identical to upper-case English letters. For these Greek letters, write them as you would the English letters.

1.9 Learning Expectations – Alphabet

In this course you are expected to learn the Greek alphabet so that you can recite or write it from Alpha to Omega from memory. For each letter you are expected to know:

- The name of the letter and can write the name.
- The upper-case and lower-case forms of the letter and can write them.
- The sound(s) of the letter and can give the English word example for the sound(s).

This is an example of what you should know for Alpha:

Name	Forms	Sound
Alpha	Aα	a in spa

The **Letters and Sounds** table on pages 223 and 224 shows this information for the entire Greek alphabet.

1.10 Learning Expectations – Vocabulary Words

In this course you are expected to learn each vocabulary word so that:

- You can pronounce it.
- You know the English gloss.

What is expected is sight recognition of the Greek word from Greek to English. For example, when you see the Greek word ἀβὴρ, you should know how to pronounce it and that the English gloss is “father”.

The **Vocabulary** section on pages 227 and 228 lists all the vocabulary words you will learn.

1.11 Something Extra - What Makes Greek Easy to Pronounce

Koine Greek is a very phonetic language, which means you can look at a written word and know how to pronounce it or hear a word and know how to spell it. Its 24 letters and 4 digraphs (two letters representing one sound) are always pronounced the same way. English is not a phonetic language and is ranked among the most difficult languages to learn because of its unpredictable spelling and pronunciation. Here is a comparison:

	Letters	Phonemes (Sounds)	Graphemes
English	26	44	~250
Koine Greek	24	29	34

A phoneme is the smallest unit of sound in a language. A grapheme is a letter or letter group that represents a single sound. For example, the English phoneme (sound) \ā\ has a number of graphemes (letter groups) that represent the same sound: **ay** in say, **ey** in hey, **ai** in aid, **ei** in vein, and **eigh** in weigh. The same sound is represented in Greek by the letter Eta (η) – just one grapheme!

You learned English that has 250 graphemes, so Greek will be easy by comparison!

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1. Read sections A. Introduction to H. Grades on pages 1 to 4. |
|--------------------------|--|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2. Give your Student Manual to your homeschool teacher and ask him/her to read sections A. Introduction to H. Grades on pages 1 to 4. |
|--------------------------|--|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3. Read section 1.1 Introduction and section 1.2 A Brief History of the Greek Language . |
|--------------------------|--|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4. Read section 1.3 The Greek Alphabet . |
|--------------------------|---|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. Watch video 1.3 The Greek Alphabet . |
|--------------------------|--|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 6. In this lesson you will learn the letters Alpha (Αα), Beta (Ββ), and Omega (Ωω).
Watch video 1.5 The Letter Alpha . Use the Writing Practice Worksheet on page 14 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud. |
|--------------------------|---|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 7. Watch video 1.5 The Letter Beta . Use the Writing Practice Worksheet on page 14 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud. |
|--------------------------|--|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 8. Watch video 1.5 The Letter Omega . Use the Writing Practice Worksheet on page 14 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud. |
|--------------------------|---|
-
- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 9. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Αα, Ββ and Ωω.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources. |
|--------------------------|---|

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Reread the bulleted points on page 7 in section **1.3 The Greek Alphabet**.
-
- ☐ 2. Read section **1.4 Alphabet Flash Cards**.
-
- ☐ 3. Follow the instructions below to photocopy and cut **Alphabet Flash Cards**.

Items Needed: 3 sheets of cardstock, Alphabet Flash Card Master (pages 233-238), scissors.

- Print or photocopy pages 233 to 238 as double sided copies onto cardstock.
- Carefully cut the cards apart using the dotted lines as a guide. Also cut off the diagonal area marked on the upper-right corner of the cards. This diagonal cut will make it easy to arrange the cards so that they all face the same way.

-
- ☐ 4. Read section **1.5 The Letters Αα, Ββ, Ωω**.
-
- ☐ 5. Read section **1.8 Writing Greek Letters**.
-
- ☐ 6. Read section **1.9 Learning Expectations – Alphabet**.
-
- ☐ 7. Use the **Αα, Ββ, Ωω Worksheet** on page 16 to practice writing the Greek letters.
-
- ☐ 8. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 9. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Αα, Ββ and Ωω.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.

Optional Alphabet Flash Card Match Game

This is an optional game that you can use throughout this course to help you memorize the alphabet.

Items Needed: Two sets of Alphabet Flash Cards on different color card stock.

1. Separately shuffle set 1 and set 2 of the Alphabet Cards.
2. Arrange the cards in set 1 in a row with the **Greek Letter** face up.
3. Arrange the cards in set 2 in a row with the **Name** face up.
4. Match the **Greek Letter** in set 1 with the **Name** in set 2.
5. As you make a match, say the name of the letter aloud.

Aα, Bβ, Ωω Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Alpha: Write it as you would an English upper-case letter A.

A A A A A

Lower-Case Alpha: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous loop without lifting your pen.

α α α α α α

α α α α α α

Upper-Case Beta: Write it as you would an English upper-case letter B.

B B B B B

Lower-Case Beta: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. The tail starts below the base line.

β β β β β β

β β β β β β

Upper-Case Omega: Begin at the star and draw a horseshoe type shape.

Ω Ω Ω Ω Ω

Lower-Case Omega: Begin at the star and write an English lower-case letter w with rounded bottoms in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.

ω ω ω ω ω

ω ω ω ω ω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

☐ 1. Read sections **1.6 Vocabulary – Lesson 1** and **1.7 Vocabulary Cards**.

☐ 2. Follow the instructions below to create vocabulary cards for Lesson 1.

Items Needed: Index cards (such as 3x5 cards).

- On one side of the card, write the word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list on page 10. Include the breathing and accent marks above the Alphas. These will be explained in Lesson 2.
- Write the gloss on the other side of the card.

☐ 3. Read section **1.10 Learning Expectations – Vocabulary Words**.

☐ 4. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 1.

☐ 5. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 1.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.

☐ 6. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Αα, Ββ and Ωω.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.

☐ *7. Each word below contains the English letter **a**. Say each word aloud and place a check before any word where the English letter **a** has the same sound as Alpha (**a** in **spa**).

___ cave	___ art	___ ape
___ apple	___ snake	___ ark
___ far	___ cake	___ ace
___ apron	___ car	___ barn
___ hard	___ snack	___ dad

☐ 8. Use the **Αα, Ββ, Ωω Worksheet** on page 18 to practice writing the Greek letters.

☐ 9. Look up and read Mark 14:32-36 in your New Testament.

In these verses, Jesus is praying in the Garden of Gethsemane on the night before His crucifixion. He addresses God using the Aramaic word for father in verse 36, which is spelled out in Greek letters as Ἀββᾶ. Jesus speaks to God using the everyday language of the family.

Here is the Greek text of the beginning of verse 36:

Greek Text: καὶ ἔλεγεν Ἀββᾶ ὁ Πατήρ, πάντα δυνατά σοι

Word-for-Word Gloss: and He said, “Abba Father, all things [are] possible for you”

 Hear It

➡ Find and circle your vocabulary word Ἀββᾶ in the Greek text shown above.

➡ How many times is the letter Alpha in the Greek text? _____ Beta? _____ (=10)

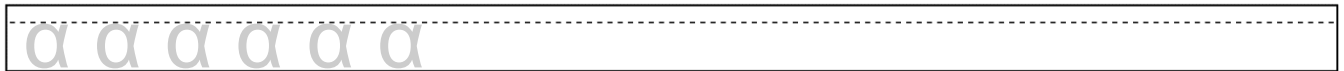
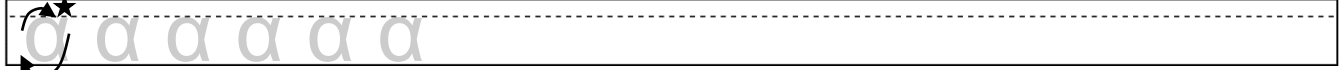
Aα, Bβ, Ωω Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Alpha: Write it as you would an English upper-case letter A.



Lower-Case Alpha: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous loop without lifting your pen.



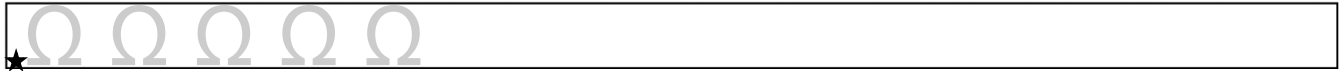
Upper-Case Beta: Write it as you would an English upper-case letter B.



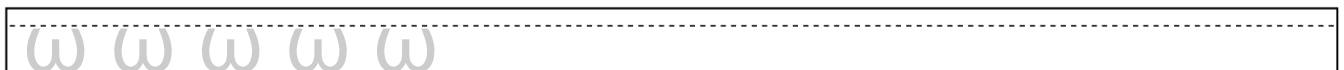
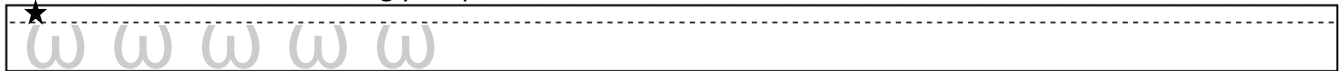
Lower-Case Beta: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. The tail starts below the base line.



Upper-Case Omega: Begin at the star and draw a horseshoe type shape.



Lower-Case Omega: Begin at the star and write an English lower-case letter w with rounded bottoms in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Αα, Ββ and Ωω.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 1.
- ☐ *4. Each word below contains the English letter **a**. Say each word aloud and place a check before any word where the English letter **a** has the same sound as Alpha (**a** in **spa**).

___ father	___ garb	___ star
___ lake	___ farm	___ add
___ snap	___ rabbit	___ swab
___ hat	___ sat	___ flag
___ aha	___ park	___ gas

- ☐ 5. The following Greek text is from Romans 8:15 and contains your vocabulary word ἄββᾱ.

οὐ γὰρ ἐλάβετε πνεῦμα δουλείας πάλιν εἰς φόβον,
ἀλλὰ ἐλάβετε πνεῦμα υἰοθεσίας,
ἐν ᾧ κρίζομεν Ἀββᾱ ὁ Πατήρ

 Hear It

- ➡ Find and circle the word ἄββᾱ in the Greek text shown above.
- ➡ How many times is the letter Alpha in this text? ___ Beta? ___ Omega? ___ (=20)

- ☐ 6. Practice writing each letter sequence or word below by tracing over the grey outlines. Then write additional copies of the sequence or word to fill the rest of the line. As you write each letter, say its name aloud.

A B Ω

α β ω

ἄββᾱ

- ☐ *7. Circle the words below where the English letter **o** has the same sound as Omega.

not / note / gone / prop / obey / hope / word / to / for / open / copy / photo / fox / cope

- ☐ 8. Complete **Lesson 1 Knowledge Check A** on page 20 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 1 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 1.

See page 223 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the "Sounds Like" Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____

The New Testament is written in Koine Greek. What does the word "koine" mean? _____

Review page 6 to check your answer.

Who was responsible for spreading Greek culture and language? _____

Review page 6 to check your answer.

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Read section **1.11 Something Extra - What Makes Greek Easy to Pronounce**.
-
- ☐ 2. Watch video **1.0 The Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 3. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 1.
-
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Αα, Ββ and Ωω.
-
- ☐ 5. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 1.
-
- ☐ 6. Practice writing each letter sequence or word below by tracing over the grey outlines. Then write additional copies of the sequence or word to fill the rest of the line. As you write each letter, say its name aloud.

α β ω

A B Ω

α β ω

αββᾱ

-
- ☐ 7. Review: Answer the following questions (see pages 5 to 7 to check your answers).
- ➡ The Greek language has been spoken for at least how many years? _____
 - ➡ The roots of Greek are from the areas around what sea? _____
 - ➡ The way Greek is spoken has not changed over its history. True / False
 - ➡ Who was responsible for spreading Greek culture and language? _____
 - ➡ What does the word “koine” mean in Greek? _____
 - ➡ How many letters are in the Greek alphabet? _____
 - ➡ How many vowels are in the Greek alphabet? _____
-
- ☐ 8. Complete **Lesson 1 Knowledge Check B** on page 22 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 1 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 1.

See page 225 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms

How many letters are in the Greek alphabet? _____

Review page 7 to check your answer.

Write the gloss for the word ἀββᾶ: _____

See page 10 to check your answer.

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

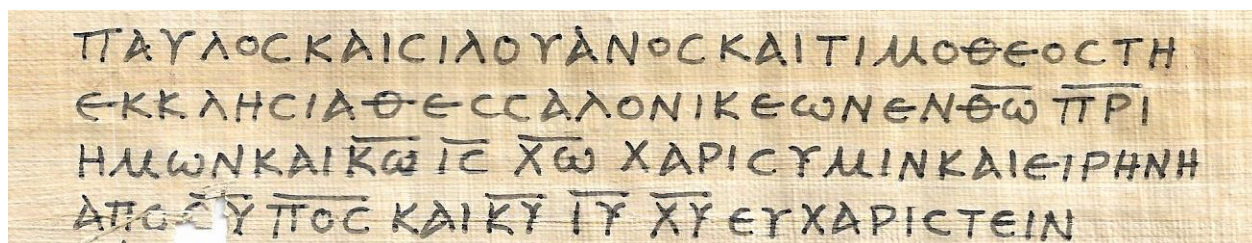
© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

2.1 Upper-Case and Lower-Case Letters

It was noted in Lesson 1 that the official version of the Greek alphabet was adopted in 403 B.C. in Athens. Since then, there have been some changes in the way the letters are written.

Originally, there were only upper-case letters called **majuscules**. Documents were written using only these upper-case letters, with no spaces between words, and no punctuation. The early copies of the New Testament were written in this style of writing as illustrated below.

This reproduction by the author shows Second Thessalonians 1:1-2 written in majuscules on papyrus. This is how early copies of the New Testament might have looked.



Over time, scribes developed running or cursive letters to make writing quicker. These cursive letters were the origin of the lower-case Greek letters and are called **minuscules**.

The development and transition to the use of lower-case letters took place during the ninth to tenth centuries. Modern printed copies of the New Testament use mostly lower-case letters. Here are the same verses from Second Thessalonians from a modern printed text. The lines of Greek text below are divided the same as the example shown above.

¹ Παῦλος καὶ Σιλουανὸς καὶ Τιμόθεος τῇ
ἐκκλησίᾳ Θεσσαλονικέων ἐν Θεῷ Πατρὶ
ἡμῶν καὶ Κυρίῳ Ἰησοῦ Χριστῷ· ² χάρις ὑμῖν καὶ εἰρήνη
ἀπὸ Θεοῦ Πατρὸς καὶ Κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ. ³ Εὐχαριστεῖν

Here is the translation that closely follows the same line divisions as the above two examples.

¹Paul and Silvanus and Timothy, to the
Church of the Thessalonians, in God our Father
and the Lord Jesus Christ. ²Grace to you and peace
from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

Besides the difference in upper-case and lower-case letters, another obvious difference between the examples shown on the previous page are the various marks above and below the letters in the modern printed text. You saw some of these marks on your vocabulary word ἀββᾱ in Section 1.6 (page 10). The marks above the text are accent marks and breathing marks. The marks below the text are iota subscripts and will be explained in Lesson 8.

2.2 Accent Marks

In English, many words have a syllable that is accented or stressed. Sometimes changing which syllable is accented changes the meaning of the word. For example:

PRO-duce / pro-DUCE
RE-cord / re-CORD

We naturally learn where English words are accented as we hear them spoken by other native speakers, such as our parents.

Greek words also have accents. In ancient Greek, accents were probably tonal rather than stress. The accent was a musical rising and falling of the voice. There were three types of accents:

Acute: A rising pitch

Circumflex: A rising and falling pitch on the same syllable

Grave: A pitch maintained at the normal level. Note that the word “grave” rhymes with “suave”.

As the Greek language spread because of the conquests of Alexander the Great and bumped up against other languages, the tonal accent gradually changed. By the time of Jesus in the first century, the Koine Greek accent was probably a simple stress accent just like in English.

Because the rules of accenting Greek words were complex, sometime around 200 B.C., accent marks were developed to help non-native speakers know where to accent words. However, accent marks were not consistently written in manuscripts until 800 years later.

Modern printed editions of ancient Greek texts, such as the works of the philosopher Aristotle or the New Testament, have accent marks. So, you will know where words are accented as you read the text.

Here are some basic points about accent marks:

- There are three types of accent marks: acute (ᾱ), circumflex (ᾱ̃), and grave (ᾱ).
- Almost every word has an accent mark.
- Occasionally a word will have two accent marks.
- Accent marks are always placed over vowels.
- Accent marks can only occur on the last three syllables of a word.
- Modern printed texts use either the rounded circumflex character (͂) or the tilde (˜) to mark the circumflex accent.

The table below shows how to pronounce the three accent marks in Koine Greek. You will learn the accents as you hear and pronounce vocabulary words.

	Acute Accent	Circumflex Accent	Grave Accent
Symbol	ᾱ	ῶ	ὰ
Example	ἀγάπη (love)	ἄββῶ (father)	τὰ πρόβατα (the sheep)
Koine Stress	Stress the syllable and return to normal voice on the next syllable.	Stress the syllable and return to normal voice on the same syllable.	No stress if speaking at normal speed. Slight stress if speaking slowly.

 Hear It

2.3 Breathing Marks

The Greek alphabet does not have a letter equivalent to the English letter h. However, ancient Greek did have the \h\ sound at the beginning of some words. Native Greek speakers learned which words began with an \h\ sound as they heard them spoken by other native speakers, such as their parents.

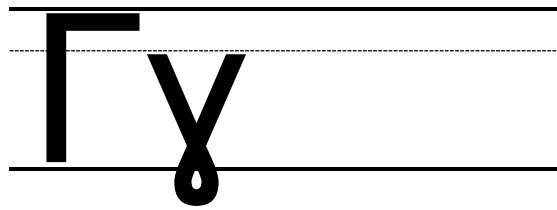
Just as with the accent marks, breathing marks were developed to help non-native speakers know when to add an \h\ sound. But as the table below shows, by the time of Koine Greek the rough breathing or \h\ sound was no longer applied to words, except perhaps by the very well educated. So, the smooth and rough breathing marks make no difference in how you pronounce a word. In Koine Greek there is no \h\ sound at the beginning of a word with a rough breathing mark. However, the smooth and rough breathing marks are part of the proper spelling of the word.

	Smooth Breathing Mark	Rough Breathing Mark
Symbol	ᾱ	ῶ
Example	ἀγάπη (love)	ἁμαρτία (sin)
Ancient Greek	No \h\ sound.	Add \h\ sound.
Koine Greek	No \h\ sound.	No \h\ sound.

Here are some basic points about breathing marks:

- There are two breathing marks: smooth (ᾱ) and rough (ῶ).
- They occur only at the beginning of a word.
- They occur only on words beginning with a vowel (α, ε, η, ι, ο, υ, ω) or the consonant Rho (ρ).
- Every word beginning with a vowel or Rho (ρ) has a breathing mark.
- A breathing mark and accent mark can occur on the same beginning vowel (ᾱ, ᾶ, ᾷ, Ᾱ, ῶ, ῷ).
- In Koine Greek pronunciation, the rough breathing sound is not pronounced.

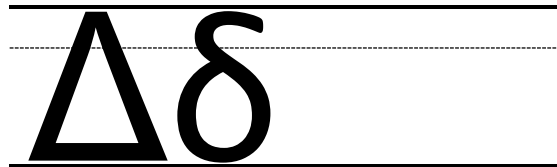
2.4 The Letters Γγ, Δδ, Εε Τὰ Γράμματα Γγ, Δδ, Εε



Name:	gamma (<i>GHAM-mah</i>)
Sound:	gh in ghost \gh\ guttural y in yet \y\ (in γε γι γει) ng in sing \ŋ\ (in γγ γκ γξ γχ)
Type:	Consonant

Gamma is the most complex letter in regard to sound. All three of the sounds shown above are common in words. You will quickly learn them as you learn vocabulary words. In this lesson you will learn the primary sound of **gh** in **ghost**. You will learn the other sounds in Lessons 5 and 10.

In modern printed texts, the lower-case Gamma often looks similar to the English lower-case y: γ.



Name:	delta (<i>THEL-tah</i>)
Sound:	th in then \th\ <u>th</u>
Type:	Consonant

Delta is somewhat similar in appearance to the D/d in the English alphabet.

Delta sounds like the **th** in **then**. Do not pronounce it like the D/d in the English alphabet.

The deposits of soil and sand at the mouth of a river are called a delta because of its triangular shape that looks like the Greek upper-case letter Delta.



Name:	epsilon (<i>eh-psee-LONE</i>)
Sound:	e in end \e\ <u>e</u>
Type:	Vowel

Epsilon is similar in appearance to the upper-case and lower-case E/e in the English alphabet.

Epsilon always sounds like the **e** in **end**.

There is an alternate way of writing the lower-case form as shown above. You may choose which lower-case form you prefer to write. The ε form is used in many modern printed texts. The € form was used by scribes in some ancient texts.

The name Epsilon was coined in the Middle Ages and means “simple e”.

2.5 Vocabulary – Lesson 2

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Δύο

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
2. ἄγω	I lead, bring, go	Verb	67
3. ὧδε	here	Adverb	61
4. ἐγώ	I	Pronoun	2666

Notes on the words:

2. ἄγω – Notice the smooth breathing mark and acute accent over the beginning Alpha.
English Derivatives: Pedagogue (a person who teaches or leads a child), agent (a person who acts on behalf of another person).

Then Pilate went outside again and said to them, “Look! I am bringing Him out to you, so that you will know that I find nothing worthy of punishment in Him.” (John 19:4)

3. ὧδε – Notice the rough breathing mark and circumflex accent over the beginning Omega.

The *disciples* said to *Jesus*, “We have nothing here except five loaves of bread and two fish.” And He said, “Bring them here to me.” (Matthew 14:17-18)

4. ἐγώ – First person, singular, personal pronoun. Used as the subject of a verb. Notice the smooth breathing mark over the beginning Epsilon.
English Derivative: Ego, egocentric.

Jesus said to him, “I (ἐγώ) am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father, except through me.” (John 14:6)

Jesus makes a bold and profound claim in this verse. He does not simply show us the way to a relationship with God, He claims that He is the way. He is the only way.

2.6 Something Extra – Pinakidion and Grapheion

🔊 Hear It

πινακίδιον καὶ γραφεῖον

A pinakidion was a small writing tablet made of wood and covered with wax. A user could write on the wax surface using a grapheion (stylus). The writing was easily removed by smoothing out the wax. These were used throughout the Greek and Roman periods and into the Middle Ages.

The pinakidion was an essential part of Greek and Roman education. The student used it to do copy work exercises. The image on the left shows an actual example of this from the second century. The inscription at the top is a neatly inscribed example, possibly by the teacher. Below that, the example is copied twice by the student. The holes in the frame allowed the user to tie several boards together.

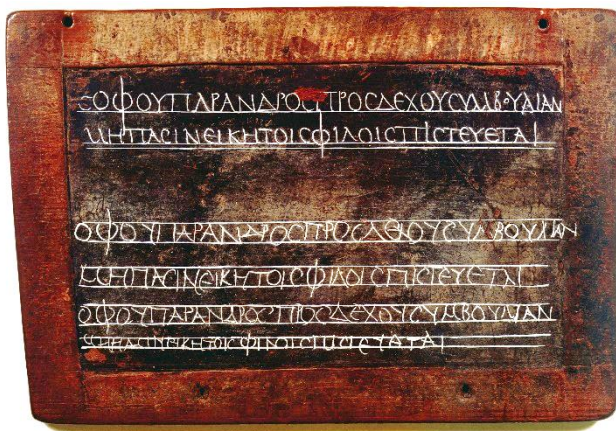
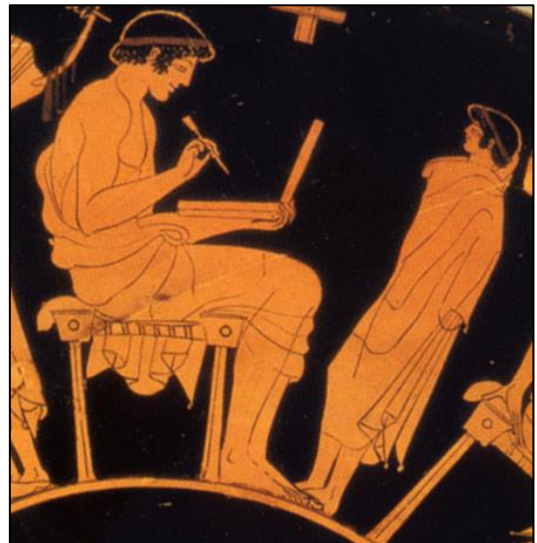


Image courtesy of the British Library from its digital collections.



Ancient Greek man with a writing tablet.
Pottery art from circa 500 B.C.

The image on the right is a vase painting by the famous Greek vase-painter Douris who lived in the fifth century B.C. Hundreds of his works have survived. The image shows a Greek man using a writing tablet and a stylus. If you didn't know this painting is 2500 years old, you would think he is working on a laptop computer!

A pinakidion is mentioned once in the New Testament in Luke 1:63. When John the Baptist was born, there was a debate among the family members about what he would be named. His father, Zechariah, was unable to speak. So, Luke tells us that...

Zechariah asked for a writing tablet [πινακίδιον] and wrote, "His name is John." And all were amazed.

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Read sections **2.1 Upper-Case and Lower-Case Letters**, **2.2 Accent Marks**, and **2.3 Breathing Marks**. There is a lot of information in these sections. Note that accent marks and breathing marks are part of any printed text you read. You do not have to figure out where they go. You simply need to:
- Recognize the 3 accent marks and 2 breathing marks. See page 25.
 - Know how to stress the accent marks. See the table on the top of page 25.
 - Remember that the breathing marks make no difference in how you pronounce a word.
-
- ☐ 2. In this lesson you will learn the letters Gamma (Γγ), Delta (Δδ), and Epsilon (Εε). Watch video **2.4 The Letter Gamma**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 30 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 3. Watch video **2.4 The Letter Delta**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 30 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 4. Watch video **2.4 The Letter Epsilon**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 30 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ *5. Circle the words below where the English letter **e** has the same sound as Epsilon.
- met / eve / ego / send / me / elf / we / emu / be / beg / edict / echo / she / lens
-
- ☐ 6. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Γγ, Δδ, and Εε. Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization. If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

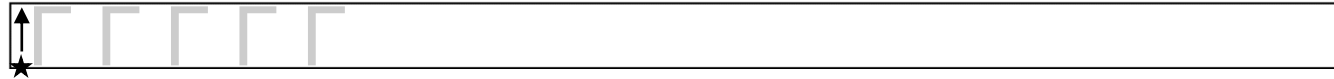
Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch videos **2.2 Accent Marks** and **2.3 Breathing Marks**.
Remember that accent marks and breathing marks are part of any printed text you read. You do not have to figure out where they go. You simply need to:
- Recognize the 3 accent marks and 2 breathing marks. See page 25.
 - Know how to stress the accent marks. See the table on the top of page 25.
 - Remember that the breathing marks make no difference in how you pronounce a word.
-
- ☐ 2. Read section **2.5 Vocabulary – Lesson 2**.
-
- ☐ 3. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 2.
-
- ☐ 4. Follow the instructions below to create vocabulary cards for Lesson 2.
Items Needed: Index cards (such as 3x5 cards).
- On one side of the card, write the word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list on page 27. Include accent marks and breathing marks.
 - Write the gloss on the other side of the card.
-
- ☐ 5. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 2.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources.
-
- ☐ 6. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 7. Read section **2.4 The Letters Γγ, Δδ, Εε**.
-
- ☐ 8. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters Γγ, Δδ, Εε.
-
- ☐ 9. Use the **Γγ, Δδ, Εε Worksheet** on page 32 to practice writing the Greek letters.
-
- ☐ 10. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Γγ, Δδ, and Εε.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.

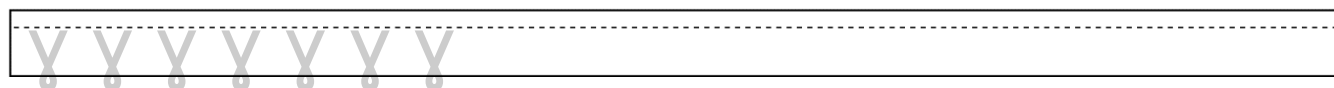
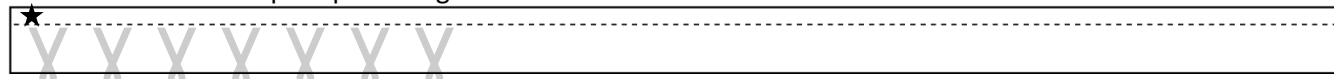
Γγ, Δδ, Εε Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

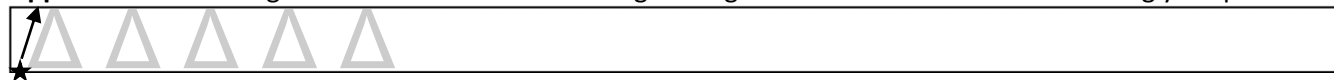
Upper-Case Gamma: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.



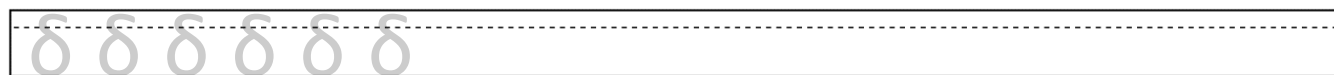
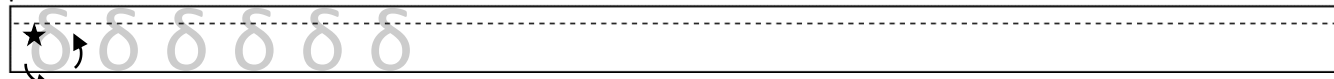
Lower-Case Gamma: Begin at the star and write the letter in a single continuous loop without lifting your pen. The bottom of the loop is open and goes below the base line.



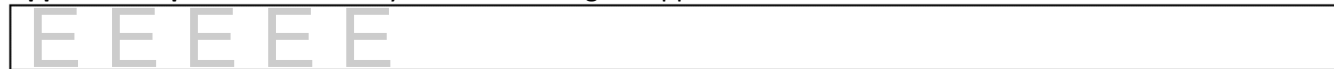
Upper-Case Delta: Begin at the star and draw a triangle using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.



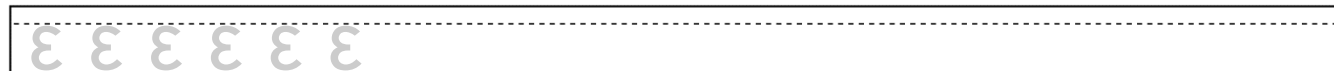
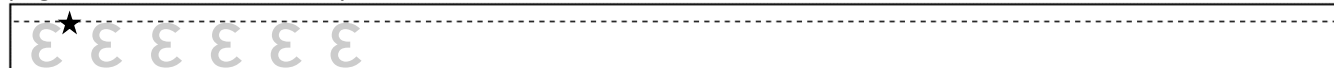
Lower-Case Delta: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous curving stroke without lifting your pen.



Upper-Case Epsilon: Write it as you would an English upper-case E.



Lower-Case Epsilon: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. See page 26 for an alternate way to write this letter.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 2.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Γγ, Δδ, and Εε.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 2.
- ☐ *4. For each word below, identify the accent and breathing marks. Circle all the terms that describe the marks. See page 25 for help. You are not responsible to learn these words.

ἥλιος (sun):	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
ἀστήρ (star):	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
σελήνη (moon):	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
οὐρανοὶ (heavens):	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
γῆ (earth):	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
κόσμος (universe):	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough

 Hear It

- ☐ 5. Use the **Γγ, Δδ, Εε Worksheet** on page 34 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 6. Look up and read John 19:1-5 in your New Testament.

This is part of the account where Pilate questions Jesus before he condemns him to death by crucifixion. Here is the Greek text of the last half of verse 4:

ἵδε ἄγω ὑμῖν αὐτὸν ἔξω, ἵνα γνῶτε ὅτι οὐδεμίαν αἰτίαν εὕρισκω ἐν αὐτῷ.

 Hear It

- 👉 Find and circle your vocabulary word ἄγω in the Greek text shown above.
- 👉 How many times is the letter Gamma in this text? ____ Delta? ____ Epsilon? ____ (=10)

- ☐ 7. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words on the blank line. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

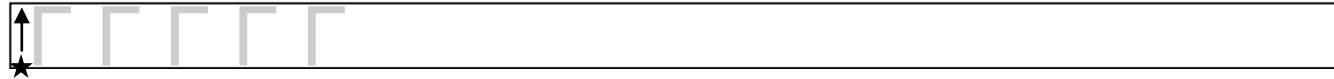
ἄγω · ἄγω · ὦδε · ὦδε · ἐγώ · ἐγώ

- ☐ 8. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.

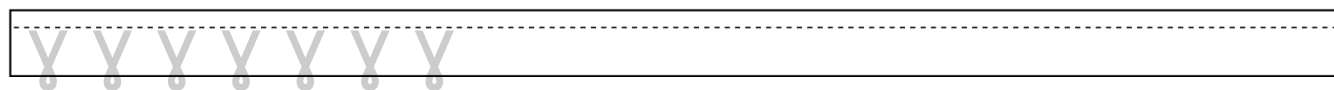
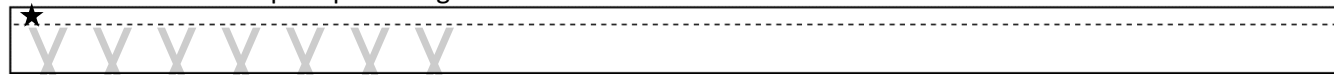
Γγ, Δδ, Εε Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

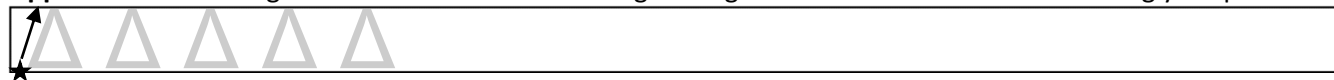
Upper-Case Gamma: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.



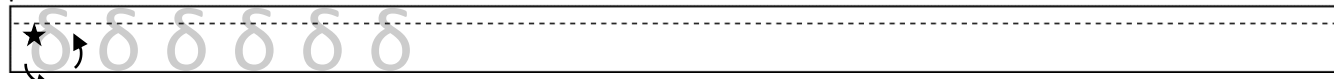
Lower-Case Gamma: Begin at the star and write the letter in a single continuous loop without lifting your pen. The bottom of the loop is open and goes below the base line.



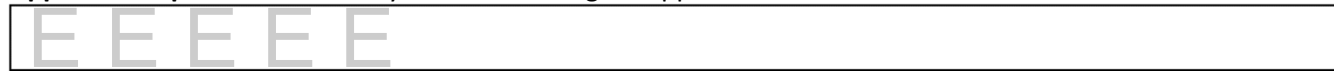
Upper-Case Delta: Begin at the star and draw a triangle using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.



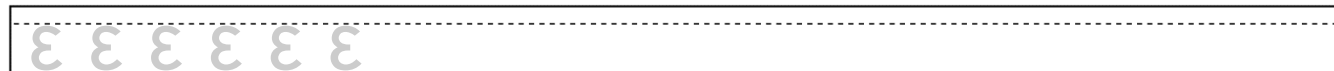
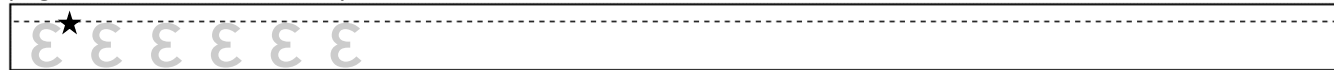
Lower-Case Delta: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous curving stroke without lifting your pen.



Upper-Case Epsilon: Write it as you would an English upper-case E.



Lower-Case Epsilon: Begin at the star and write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. See page 26 for an alternate way to write this letter.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Γγ, Δδ, and Εε.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 2.
- ☐ *3. Word Search: Find the four vocabulary words listed below in the word search box. Words are spelled across, up-and-down, and diagonally (but not backwards).

ἀββᾶ
ἄγω
ἐγώ
ὤδε

ω	α	γ	ω	η	ι
δ	β	ο	ε	β	ω
α	β	κ	μ	γ	β
ω	α	υ	δ	ο	ω
κ	δ	μ	ω	ε	ν
λ	δ	ε	υ	γ	ω

- ☐ 4. Practice writing the Greek letter sequences below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies to fill the rest of the line. As you write the letter, say its name aloud.

Γ Δ Ε

γ δ ε

- ☐ *5. Translate this short sentence: ἐγὼ ἄγω
- ☐ 6. Look up and read John 14:1-6 in your New Testament.

This is from the account of the Last Supper the night before Jesus' crucifixion. You are probably familiar with verse 6 where Jesus says, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life." Below is that phrase in Greek. By the end of Lesson 8, you will know every word in this phrase and be able to say it.

Greek Text: ἐγὼ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωή

Word-for-Word Gloss: I am the way and the truth and the life

🔊 Hear It

- ➡ Find and circle your vocabulary word ἐγὼ in the Greek text shown above.
- ➡ Count the accent marks: Acute _____ Circumflex _____ Grave _____ (=6)
- ➡ Count the breathing marks: Smooth _____ Rough _____ (=7)
- ➡ Listen to the **Hear It** audios of this verse several times.

- ☐ 7. Complete **Lesson 2 Knowledge Check A** on page 36 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 2 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 2.

See page 223 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the "Sounds Like" Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____ Sounds like the _____ in _____ Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____

For the Greek words below:

1) Write the English gloss.

2) Circle all the terms that describe the accent and breathing marks in the word.

See page 198 to check your answers.

1. ἀββᾱ _____ acute circumflex grave smooth rough
2. ᾗγω _____ acute circumflex grave smooth rough
3. ᾧδε _____ acute circumflex grave smooth rough
4. ἐγὼ _____ acute circumflex grave smooth rough

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 2.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Γγ, Δδ, and Εε.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 2.
- ☐ 5. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words to fill the lines. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

α γ ω

ω δ ε

ε γ ω

- ☐ *6. Circle all the terms that describe the accent and/or breathing marks over each Alpha. See page 25 for help.

ᾱ:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
ᾶ:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
ᾷ:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
Ᾱ:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
Ὰ:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
Ά:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
᾽:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough

- ☐ 7. Complete **Lesson 2 Knowledge Check B** on page 38 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ 8. Read section **2.6 Something Extra – Pinakidion and Grapheion**.

Lesson 2 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 6 Greek letters you learned in Lessons 1 and 2.

See page 225 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
Omega	

Draw a line to connect the accent or breathing mark with its name.

See page 199 to check your answers.

´

Acute Accent

ˆ

Circumflex Accent

`

Grave Accent

˘

Smooth Breathing Mark

Ͱ

Rough Breathing Mark

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

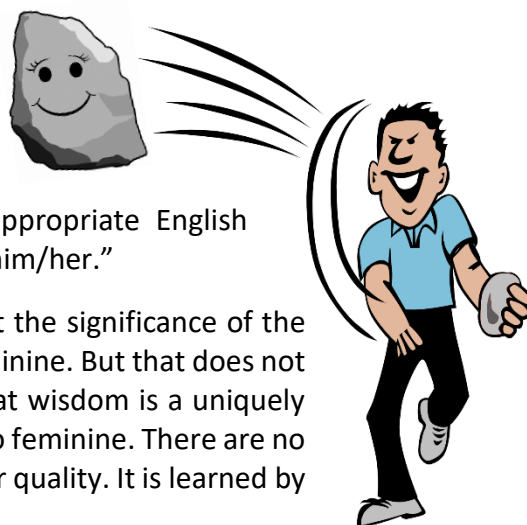
3.1 Grammatical Gender

Grammatical gender is a way of classifying nouns into categories such as masculine, feminine, or neuter. In English, nouns that refer to things with a natural gender of male are masculine, and things with a natural gender of female are feminine. Anything outside these two categories is usually neuter. In sentences, words such as pronouns must agree with the gender of the noun they describe. For example:

he is a man she is a woman it is a rock

Greek nouns also have grammatical gender. Like English, Greek nouns that refer to things with a natural gender of male or female have the corresponding grammatical gender of masculine and feminine. However, nouns that describe things or qualities are not necessarily neuter. For example, in Greek grass is masculine, rock is feminine, and child is neuter. Just as in English, pronouns must agree with the gender of the noun. Here are how sentences using these three words would be constructed in Greek:

Did I mow the grass? I mowed him.
Did I throw the rock? I threw her.
Did I feed the child? I fed it.



When Greek sentences are translated into English, the appropriate English pronoun is substituted - “I mowed it”, “I threw it” and “I fed him/her.”

The gender of a Greek noun does not convey anything about the significance of the word. For example, the Greek word for wisdom (σοφία) is feminine. But that does not mean that the Greeks thought of wisdom as a woman or that wisdom is a uniquely feminine quality. Note that the word ignorance (ἄγνοια) is also feminine. There are no rules in Greek to predict the gender of a noun that is a thing or quality. It is learned by looking up the word in a dictionary.

3.2 The Article (“the”)

In English, the word “the” is called the **definite article**. In Greek it is simply called the **article**. The Greek article has a number of uses. One important use is to identify the grammatical gender of a word.

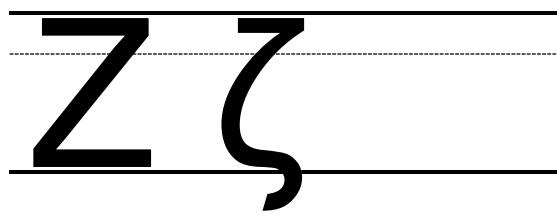
In English there is only one form of the definite Article: **the**. It is used for nouns of all genders, whether singular or plural: the man, the men, the woman, the women, the rock, the rocks. However, in Greek the article has separate masculine, feminine, and neuter forms: **ὁ ἡ τὸ**

Masculine Form	Feminine Form	Neuter Form
ὁ χόρτος the grass	ἡ πέτρα the rock	τὸ παιδίον the child

 Hear It

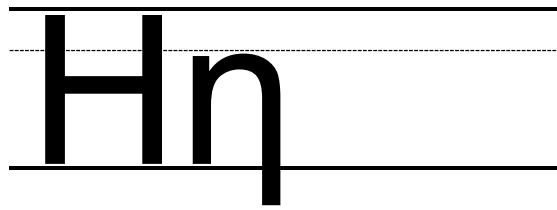
Whenever a noun is listed in the vocabulary list, it will be preceded by the article **ὁ**, **ἡ**, or **τὸ** so that you know the word’s gender. You will learn more about the Greek article in future lessons.

3.3 The Letters Ζζ, Ηη, Θθ Τὰ Γράμματα Ζζ, Ηη, Θθ



Name:	zeta (ZAY-tah)
Sound:	z in zest \z\
Type:	Consonant

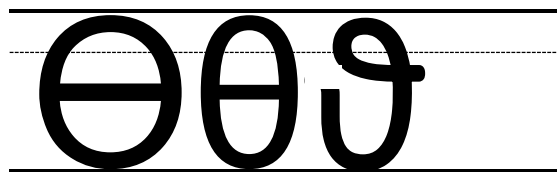
Zeta is similar in appearance and identical in sound to the Z/z in the English alphabet.



Name:	eta (AY-tah)
Sound:	e in olé \ā\
Type:	Vowel

The appearance of Eta can be confusing. The upper-case form looks like an English upper-case H and the lower-case form looks like an English lower-case n. However, it is neither. It is an e-class vowel that sounds like the **e** in **olé**.

Eta always sounds like the **e** in **olé**.



Name:	theta (THAY-tah)
Sound:	th in thin \th\
Type:	Consonant

Theta does not look like any letter in the English alphabet.

Do not confuse its sound with the letter Delta. Theta sounds like the **th** in **thin**. Delta sounds like the **th** in **then**. Say thin and then aloud several times to hear the difference. Notice the position of your tongue as you pronounce each word.

There is an alternate way of writing the lower-case form as shown above.

3.4 Vocabulary – Lesson 3

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Τρία

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
5. ἡ γῆ	earth, land, soil	Noun	250
6. ἡ ζωή	life	Noun	135
7. ἡ θεά	goddess	Noun	1

Notes on the words:

The three words in the list are feminine nouns. The feminine article ἡ (which mean “the”) appears before each word to identify the words as feminine. See explanation on page 39. Include the article ἡ on your vocabulary cards.

5. ἡ γῆ – Has a broad range of meanings including the planet earth (“heaven and earth”), a geographic area (“land of Israel”), dry land (“land and sea”) and soil (“seeds fell on the good soil”). The context determines how it should be translated.

English Derivatives: Geography, geology.

“Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.” (Mark 13:31)

And *Jesus* was saying, “The kingdom of God is like a person who casts seed on the soil.” (Mark 4:26)

6. ἡ ζωή – Can refer to physical life or spiritual life.

English Derivatives: Zoe (feminine name), zoo, zoology, protozoa.

In Him was life and the life was the light of mankind. (John 1:4)

Jesus said to her, “I am the resurrection and the life. The one who believes in me will live, even if he dies.” (John 11:25)

“This is eternal life: That they know You, the only true God, and the one You sent, Jesus Christ.” (John 17:3)

7. ἡ θεά – Though this word is seldom used in the Bible, it is used frequently in secular Greek literature. It is used in the New Testament in Acts 19:27 in reference to the temple of the goddess Artemis in the city of Ephesus in Asia Minor (modern day Turkey). The Greeks believed that Artemis was a daughter of Zeus and the twin sister of Apollo. The Romans called her Diana.

...the temple of the great goddess Artemis... (Acts 19:27)

3.5 Something Extra – What is the New Testament?

The New Testament is a collection of 27 books or writings by the followers of Jesus. They were written over a period of 50 years from about 45 A.D. to 95 A.D. Not everything Jesus said or did was written down, but the 27 books in the New Testament record the essential information about the person and message of Jesus – the Good News of salvation.

John, one of the Twelve Disciples who followed Jesus, says this about what was written down:

Jesus did many other signs in the presence of His disciples which are not written in this book. But these are written so that you might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and by believing you might have life in His name. (John 20:30-31)

Now there are also many other things that Jesus did. If they were all written down, I suppose the world itself could not contain the books that would be written. (John 21:25)

The 27 books in the New Testament can be divided into two types of documents – Gospels and Epistles.

The **Gospels** are the books named Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John. They record the words and deeds of Jesus from four different perspectives. They are like four portraits of the same person by four different artists. Their purpose was to proclaim the Good News about Jesus Christ. The word Gospel means Good News. The word comes down to us from the Old English word *god-spell*, meaning “good story”, which was a translation of the Latin, which was a translation of the original Greek word *euangelion* (εὐαγγέλιον) in the New Testament which means “good news”.

The other 23 books in the New Testament are called **Epistles**. These are personal letters written to various churches to teach and admonish the believers about living a Christian life. These letters were read at public gatherings of believers and then shared with other churches. The word Epistle is from the Greek word *epistolē* (ἐπιστολή), which means “letter”.

The original copies of the Gospels and Epistles were written with majuscules on papyrus (see page 23). Shortly after the last book, The Revelation to John, was written around 95 A.D., the 27 books were joined into a collection called the New Testament.



Sometimes personal letters were folded, tied, and sealed until they reached the intended recipient.
Reproduction of an epistle (letter) written on papyrus and sealed for privacy.

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Read sections **3.1 Grammatical Gender** and **3.2 The Article**.
-
- ☐ 2. In this lesson you will learn the letters Zeta (Ζζ), Eta (Ηη), and Theta (Θθ).
Watch video **3.3 The Letter Zeta**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 44 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 3. Watch video **3.3 The Letter Eta**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 44 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ *4. Circle the words below where the English letter **e** has the same sound as Eta.
- bet / meet / obey / she / prey / shelf / elk / they / grey / belt / whey / be / tent / hey
- Circle the words below where the English letter **e** has the same sound as Epsilon.
- pet / elm / be / kept / acme / he / cent / relay / led / maybe / prefix / deck / redo / edit
-
- ☐ 5. Watch video **3.3 The Letter Theta**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 44 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 6. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ζζ, Ηη, and Θθ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **3.0 Review**.
 - ☐ 2. Watch video **3.1 Grammatical Gender**.
 - ☐ 3. Read section **3.4 Vocabulary – Lesson 3**.
 - ☐ 4. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 3.
 - ☐ 5. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 3. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the feminine article ἡ.
 - ☐ 6. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 3.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources.
 - ☐ 7. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
 - ☐ 8. Read section **3.3 The Letters Ζζ, Ηη, Θθ**.
 - ☐ 9. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters Ζζ, Ηη, Θθ.
 - ☐ 10. Use the **Ζζ, Ηη, Θθ Worksheet** on page 46 to practice writing the Greek letters.
 - ☐ 11. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ζζ, Ηη, and Θθ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.

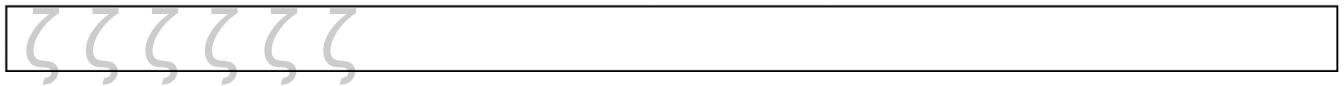
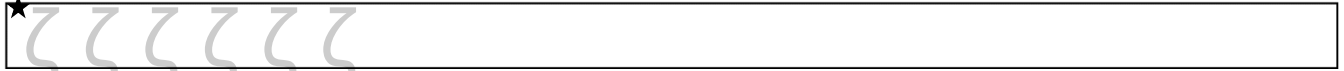
Zz, Hh, Θθ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Zeta: Write it as you would an English upper-case Z.



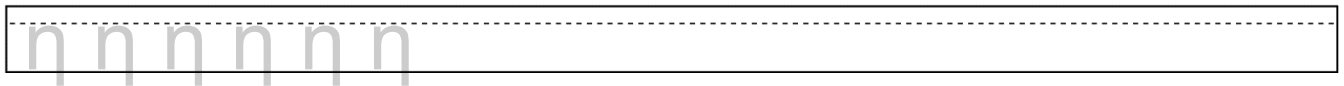
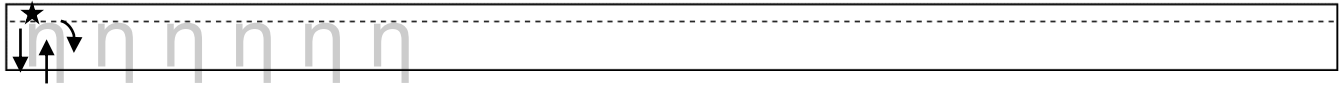
Lower-Case Zeta: Begin at the star and write the letter in a single continuous stroke without lifting your pen. The tail ends below the base line.



Upper-Case Eta: Write it as you would an English upper-case H.



Lower-Case Eta: Begin at the star at the top of the left leg. Write it just as you would a lower-case English n but extend the right leg below the base line. Write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.



Upper-Case Theta: Write it as you would an English upper-case O and add a horizontal line through the middle.



Lower-Case Theta: Follow the instructions for writing an upper-case Theta but make it more oval in shape. See page 40 for an alternate way to write this letter.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 3.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ζζ, Ηη, and Θθ.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 3.
- ☐ *4. Krazy Koine: The Greek letters in the left column are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word. Pronounce each Krazy Koine word and decide if the sound matches A, B or C. Circle the correct answer.

	A	B	C
δη	they	day	the
γη	go	yen	gay
ωθ	with	oath	oat
αζ	as	oz	at
γηβ	gab	yes	gave

- ☐ 5. Use the **Zζ, Ηη, Θθ Worksheet** on page 48 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 6. Look up and read John 1:1-5 in your New Testament.

This is the beginning of John's Gospel, referred to as the Prologue. John introduces Christ as the eternal Word who came to reveal God. He is the creator of all things and the source of life. Here is the Greek text of verse 4:

Greek Text: ἐν αὐτῷ ζωὴ ἦν, καὶ ἡ ζωὴ ἦν τὸ φῶς τῶν ἀνθρώπων

Word-for-Word Gloss: in him life was, and the life was the light of mankind

 Hear It

- ➡ Find and circle your vocabulary word ζωὴ in the Greek text shown above (2 times).
- ➡ How many times is the letter Zeta in this text? ____ Eta? ____ Theta? ____ (=8)

- ☐ 7. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words on the blank line. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

αββα · ἡ γῆ · ἡ ζωὴ · ἡ θεά

- ☐ 8. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.

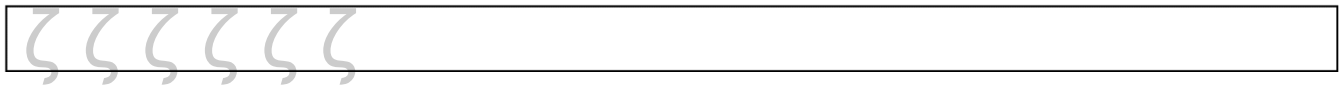
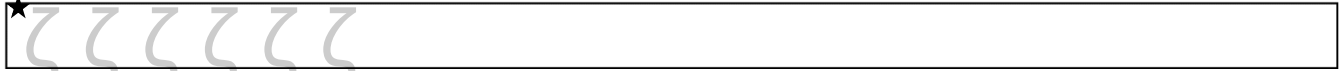
Zz, Hh, Θθ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Zeta: Write it as you would an English upper-case Z.



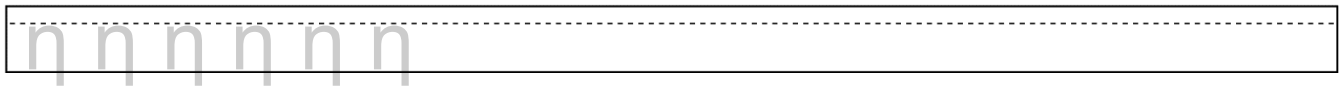
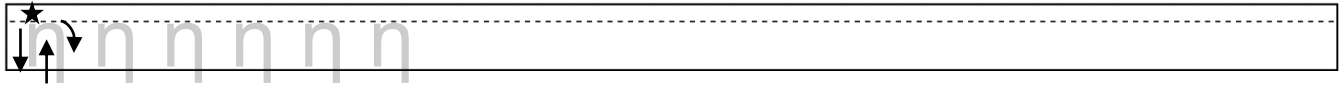
Lower-Case Zeta: Begin at the star and write the letter in a single continuous stroke without lifting your pen. The tail ends below the base line.



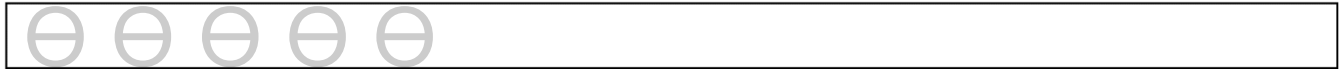
Upper-Case Eta: Write it as you would an English upper-case H.



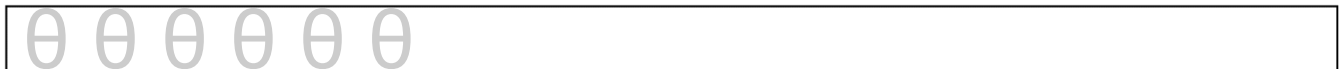
Lower-Case Eta: Begin at the star at the top of the left leg. Write it just as you would a lower-case English n but extend the right leg below the base line. Write the letter using a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.



Upper-Case Theta: Write it as you would an English upper-case O and add a horizontal line through the middle.



Lower-Case Theta: Follow the instructions for writing an upper-case Theta but make it more oval in shape. See page 40 for an alternate way to write this letter.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ζζ, Ηη, and Θθ.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 3.
- ☐ *3. Krazy Koine: The Greek letters in the left column are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word. Pronounce each Krazy Koine word and decide if the sound matches A, B or C. Circle the correct answer.

	A	B	C
δω	dough	do	though
γω	yo	go	ow
βηγ	vague	bag	beg
γηζ	yes	gaze	gate
δωζ	toes	doze	those

- ☐ 4. Practice writing the Greek letter sequences below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies to fill the rest of the line. As you write the letter, say its name aloud.

Z H Θ

ζ η θ

- ☐ 5. The Greek text below is from 1 Corinthians 10:26, which is a quotation of Psalm 24:1. Notice that the gloss for the Greek word αὐτῆς is “of her”. That is because the word “earth” (γῆ) is feminine in Greek and this pronoun αὐτῆς must have the same grammatical gender. But it would be translated into English as “of it” since “earth” is a neuter word in English.

Literal: “the earth is the Lord’s and her fullness”

English: “the earth is the Lord’s and its fullness”

Greek Text: τοῦ Κυρίου ἡ γῆ καὶ τὸ πλήρωμα αὐτῆς

Word-for-Word Gloss: [is] of the Lord _____ and the fullness of her [of it]

🔊 Hear It

- ➡ Provide the missing gloss for the words that are underlined above.
- ➡ Count the accent marks: Acute _____ Circumflex _____ Grave _____ (=7)
- ➡ Count the breathing marks: Smooth _____ Rough _____ (=2)

- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 3 Knowledge Check A** on page 50 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 3 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 3.

See page 223 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the "Sounds Like" Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____

For the Greek words below:

1) Write the English gloss.

2) Circle all the terms that describe the accent and breathing marks in the word and the article.

See page 200 to check your answers.

5. ἡ γῆ _____ acute circumflex grave smooth rough
6. ἡ ζωή _____ acute circumflex grave smooth rough
7. ἡ θεά _____ acute circumflex grave smooth rough

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 3.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ζζ, Ηη, and Θθ.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 3.
- ☐ 5. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words to fill the lines. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ἡ γῆ

ἡ ζωή

ἡ θεά

- ☐ *6. Each English word below has a **th** in it. Pronounce each word and decide whether the **th** sounds like the **th** sound of Delta or the **th** sound of Theta. Write a δ or θ on the line in front of the word to indicate your choice.

_____ thin	_____ thaw	_____ wrath
_____ this	_____ thug	_____ they
_____ both	_____ then	_____ those
_____ math	_____ that	_____ bath
_____ thus	_____ them	_____ thank
_____ than	_____ myth	_____ thee

- ☐ 7. Complete **Lesson 3 Knowledge Check B** on page 52 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ 8. Read section **3.5 Something Extra – What is the New Testament?**

Lesson 3 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 9 Greek letters you learned in Lessons 1 to 3.

See page 225 to check your answers.

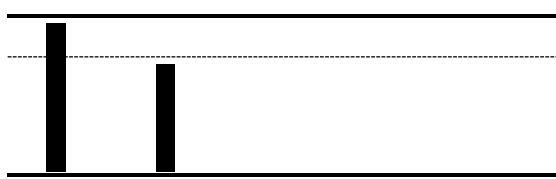
Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
Omega	

Grammatical _____ is a way of classifying nouns into categories of masculine, feminine, or neuter.
See page 201 to check your answer.

The Greek word for “the” is called the _____.
See page 201 to check your answer.

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.
© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

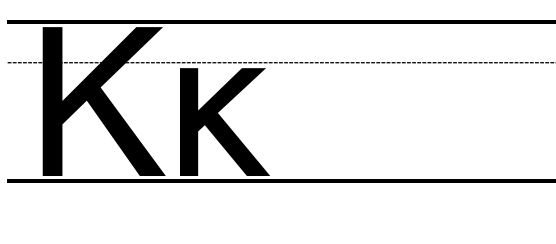
4.1 The Letters Ιι, Κκ, Λλ Τὰ Γράμματα Ιι, Κκ, Λλ

	Name:	iota (<i>ee-OH-tah</i>)
	Sound:	i in ski \ē\
	Type:	Vowel

Iota is similar in appearance to the I/i in the English alphabet.

Iota always sounds like the **i** in ski. Never put a dot above the lower-case iota.

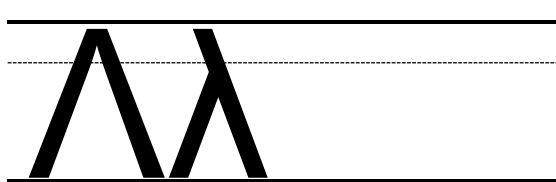
Because Iota is the smallest letter in the Greek alphabet, the letter is used in English phrases like “I don’t care one iota”. This means, “I don’t care at all, not even a little”. Jesus uses the word iota in Matthew 5:18 where He says, “not one iota or pen stroke will pass away from the Law, until all is accomplished.” By saying this, Jesus is affirming the authority of the Old Testament, right down to the smallest detail.

	Name:	kappa (<i>KAHP-pah</i>)
	Sound:	k in skit \k\ g in go \g\ (in γκ νκ)
	Type:	Consonant

Kappa is similar in appearance and sound to the K/k in the English alphabet.

Kappa usually sounds like the **k** in skit (its primary sound), but occasionally sounds like the **g** in go.

Most Greek consonants have only one sound, but a few have several sounds depending on what letter they come before or after. Kappa is an example of this.

	Name:	lambda (<i>LAHMV-thah</i>)
	Sound:	l in let \l\
	Type:	Consonant

Lambda does not look like the L/l in the English alphabet, but it has the same sound.

When pronouncing the name of the letter be sure to include the \v\ sound at the end of the first syllable.

Lambda sounds like the **l** in let.

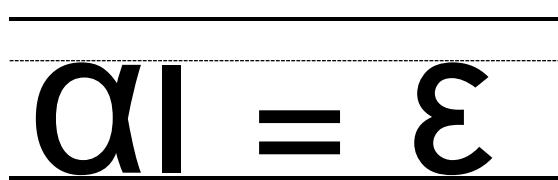
4.2 Vowel Digraphs αι and ει

A digraph is a combination of two letters that represent one sound. In English, there are around fifty vowel¹ digraphs such as the **ea** in **teach**, the **oo** in **moon**, and the **oe** in **doe**. Notice that these combinations of two vowels have only one vowel sound.

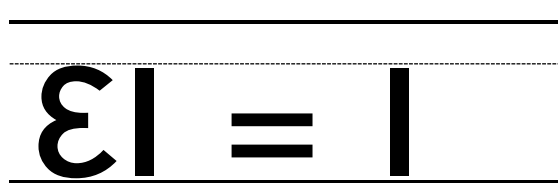
In Koine Greek there are only four vowel digraphs that you need to learn: **αι ει οι ου**

In this lesson you will learn the sounds of **αι** and **ει**. You will learn **οι** and **ου** in Lesson 9.

αι and **ει** are identical in sound to two letters you already know.

	Name:	alpha-iota
	Sound:	e in end \e\
	Type:	Vowel Digraph

αι sounds just like the letter Epsilon
like the **e** in **end**²

	Name:	epsilon-iota
	Sound:	i in ski \ē\
	Type:	Vowel Digraph

ει sounds just like the letter Iota
like the **i** in **ski**³

If a digraph has a breathing mark and/or accent mark in a word, the mark is always written over the second vowel in the digraph. They are treated as a unit. This rule applies to all the digraphs that you will learn. For example:

αί αἶ αῖ

¹Digraphs can also be made of consonants, such as the **kn** in **knight**. There are no consonant digraphs in Greek.

²An English vowel digraph that looks similar and has the same sound is the **ai** in **said**.

³An English vowel digraph that looks similar and has the same sound is the **ei** in **seize**.

4.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 4

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Τέσσερα

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
8. ἡ ἀδικία	unrighteousness	Noun	25
9. ἡ ἀλήθεια	truth	Noun	109
10. καί	and, even, also	Conjunction	9161

Notes on the words:

8. ἡ ἀδικία – A feminine noun. Unrighteousness is violating a standard such as God’s commandments.

If we confess our sins, He is faithful and righteous to forgive us for our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness. (1 John 1:9)

9. ἡ ἀλήθεια – A feminine noun. Note the digraph **ει** that sounds like the **i** in **ski**.
English Derivative: Alethea (feminine name).

Then Jesus was saying to the Jews who had believed Him, “If you remain in My word, you are truly My disciples. And you will know the truth and the truth will set you free.” (John 8:31-32)

10. καί – Note the digraph **αι** that sounds like the **e** in **end**. Note also that the accent mark is over the second letter of the digraph.

καί is the second most frequently used word in the New Testament. In Greek, conjunctions are frequently used to join one sentence to another. Many sentences begin with a conjunction. This is bad English but good Greek.

Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. (Philippians 1:2)

“And forgive us of our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors.” (Matthew 6:12)

4.4 Something Extra – How Many Words are in the Greek New Testament?

How many words are in the Greek text of the New Testament? The exact answer depends on which text of the New Testament is used for the count. There are slight variations in the original Greek manuscripts that are used to construct the Greek text used for English translations. Various vocabulary reference books and internet searches give counts that are similar but not identical, but the following rounded numbers are very close to an actual count:

Total Word Count = Slightly more than 138,000

Unique Word Count = Slightly more than 5400

In the vocabulary words for this lesson, you learned that the Greek word καί is the second most frequently used word in the New Testament – 9161 times. Not surprisingly, the Greek word for “the” (ὁ, ἡ, τό) is the most frequently used word – 19,867 times. See Section 3.2 (page 39) regarding “the”.

At the opposite end of word frequency, 1940 of the 5400 unique words are used only one time in the New Testament. In linguistics, words that occur only once in a written work are called *hapax legomenon*, which is the Greek phrase ἅπαξ λεγόμενον¹, meaning “being said once”.

Many beginning Greek courses expect the student to learn every word used at least 50 times in the New Testament. This is about 310 Greek words. These 310 words account for about 110,000 of the 138,000 word occurrences in the New Testament – about 80% of the total word count. The student who learns these 310 words will be able to recognize 8 out of 10 words in the text of the New Testament.

In this course you will learn about 47 of these 310 words

¹ἅπαξ has a rough breathing mark over the alpha. In ancient Greek this indicated that the word started with an \h\ sound. Notice that this \h\ sound has come over into the English spelling - hapax.

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **4.0 Lesson Review**.
-
- ☐ 2. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 3. In this lesson you will learn the letters Iota (Ιι), Kappa (Κκ), and Lambda (Λλ). Watch video **4.1 The Letter Iota**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 58 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ *4. Circle the words below where the English letter **i** has the same sound as Iota.
- sit / curious / taxi / hit / deli / inn / ivy / safari / media / icon / input / via / ivory / studio
-
- ☐ 5. Watch video **4.1 The Letter Kappa**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 58 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 6. Watch video **4.1 The Letter Lambda**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 58 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 7. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ιι, Κκ, and Λλ. Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization. If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Read section **4.1 The Letters Ιι, Κκ, Λλ**.
-
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters Ιι, Κκ, Λλ.
-
- ☐ 3. Use the **Ιι, Κκ, Λλ Worksheet** on page 60 to practice writing the Greek letters.
-
- ☐ 4. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ιι, Κκ, and Λλ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
-
- ☐ 5. Read section **4.2 Vowel Digraphs αι and ει**.
-
- ☐ 6. Watch video **4.2 Vowel Digraphs αι and ει**.
-
- ☐ 7. Read section **4.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 4**.
-
- ☐ 8. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 4.
-
- ☐ 9. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 4. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the feminine article ἡ.
-
- ☐ 10. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words on the blank line. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ἡ ἀδικία · ἡ ἀλήθεια · καί

-
- ☐ 11. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 4.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources.

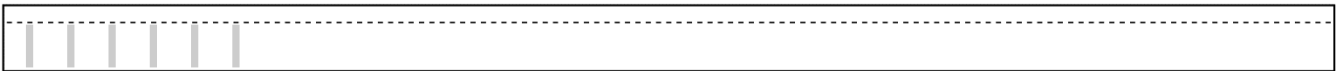
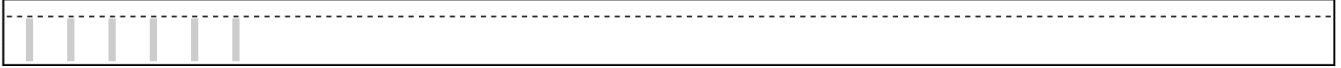
Ii, Kk, Λλ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Iota: Write it as you would an English upper-case I.



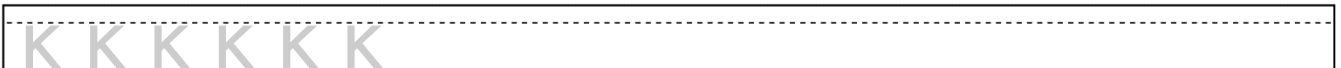
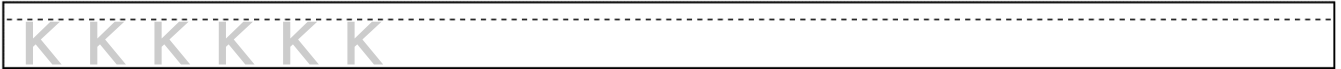
Lower-Case Iota: Write it as you would an English lower-case i, but without the dot.



Upper-Case Kappa: Write it as you would an English upper-case K.



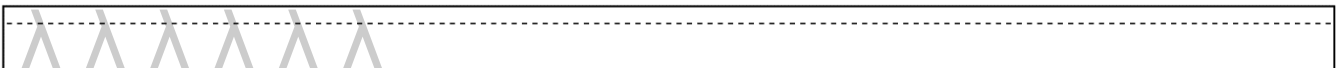
Lower-Case Kappa: Write it as you would an English upper-case K, but smaller in size.



Upper-Case Lambda: Begin at the star and write an upside-down English upper-case V.



Lower-Case Lambda: Begin at the star and draw the first leg on the right. Then draw the second leg on the left.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 4.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ιι, Κκ, and Λλ.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 4.
- ☐ *5. Krazy Koine: The Greek letters in the left column are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word. Pronounce each Krazy Koine word and decide if the sound matches A, B or C. Circle the correct answer.

	A	B	C
ελκ	ink	ilk	elk
ζειλ	zeal	seal	veil
ιζι	ivy	easy	is
ειγλ	easel	eagle	ankle

	A	B	C
κηβ	cave	cobb	keep
δι	die	thee	day
δειζ	this	dish	these
κιζ	kiss	keys	kit

- ☐ 6. Use the **Ιι, Κκ, Λλ Worksheet** on page 62 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 7. Below is John 14:6 from the New Testament.

You have seen this verse before in the Learning Exercises for Lesson 2.

Greek Text: ἐγὼ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωή**Word-for-Word Gloss:** _____ am _____ way _____ Hear It

- ➡ Find and circle your vocabulary word ἀλήθεια in the Greek text shown above.
- ➡ Write the gloss under each Greek word where there is a blank space (8 words).
- ➡ How many times is the digraph αι in this text? ____ ει? ____ (=4)

- ☐ 8. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words on the blank line. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ἡ ἀδικία • ἡ ἀλήθεια • καί

- ☐ 9. Watch video **4.0 Pronunciation Practice 1**.

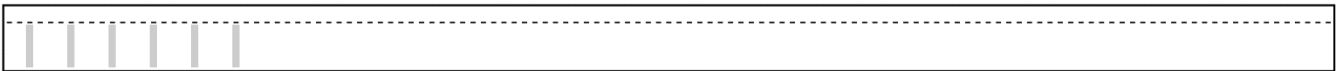
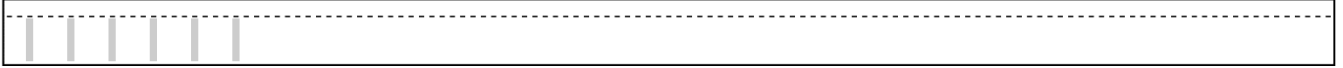
Ii, Kk, Λλ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Iota: Write it as you would an English upper-case I.



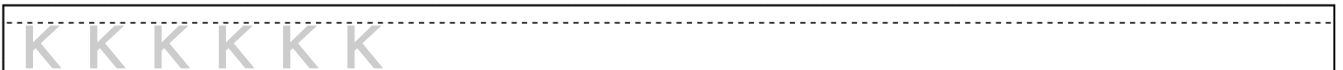
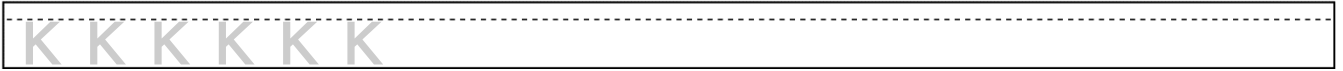
Lower-Case Iota: Write it as you would an English lower-case i, but without the dot.



Upper-Case Kappa: Write it as you would an English upper-case K.



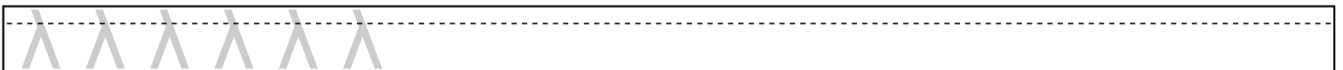
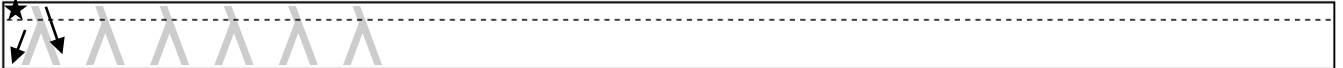
Lower-Case Kappa: Write it as you would an English upper-case K, but smaller in size.



Upper-Case Lambda: Begin at the star and write an upside-down English upper-case V.



Lower-Case Lambda: Begin at the star and draw the first leg on the right. Then draw the second leg on the left.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>


- ☐ 1. Watch video **4.0 Pronunciation Practice 2**.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ιι, Κκ, and Λλ.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 4.
- ☐ *4. Krazy Koine Konnect: The Greek letters in columns A and C are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word in Column B. The six Krazy Koine words in Column A have exact sound matches in Column C, even though they are spelled differently. Draw a line to match the words in columns A, B and C that sound the same.

A	B	C
κεγ	eve	λιβ
ιβ	leave	ειζι
κειζ	keys	ειβ
λειβ	levy	λαιβει
ιζει	keg	κιζ
λεβι	easy	καιγ

- ☐ 5. Look up and read 1 Corinthians 13:4-7 in your New Testament.
- 1 Corinthians 13 is called the “Love Chapter”. In it, the author Paul describes the characteristics of genuine love. Verse six teaches that genuine love does not take pleasure in seeing others fail or be overtaken by misfortunes. Instead, it rejoices when what is good triumphs over evil. Below is the Greek text of verse six.

Greek Text: οὐ χαίρει ἐπὶ τῇ ἀδικίᾳ, συνχαίρει δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ

Word-for-Word Gloss: does not rejoice in -- _____, rejoices with but the _____

 Hear It

- ➡ Provide the missing gloss for the words that are underlined above.
- ➡ Count the accent marks: Acute _____ Circumflex _____ Grave _____ (=8)
- ➡ Count the breathing marks: Smooth _____ Rough _____ (=4)
- ➡ How many times is the digraph αι in this text? _____ ει? _____ (=5)
- ➡ See page 164 for an explanation of why δὲ (“but”) is not the first word in its clause.

- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 4 Knowledge Check A** on page 64 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 4 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 4.

See page 223 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the "Sounds Like" Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____ Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____

For the Greek words below:

- 1) Write the English gloss.
- 2) If the word contains a digraph, circle the digraph.

See page 202 to check your answers.

8. ἡ ἀδικία _____
9. ἡ ἀλήθεια _____
10. καί _____

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 4.
-
- ☐ 2. Watch video **4.0 Vocabulary Review**.
-
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Ιι, Κκ, and Λλ.
-
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 4.
-
- ☐ 5. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words to fill the line. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ἡ ἀδικία

ἡ ἀλήθεια

καί

-
- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 4 Knowledge Check B** on page 66 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
-
- ☐ 7. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 8. Read section **4.4 Something Extra – How Many Words are in the Greek New Testament?**

Lesson 4 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 12 Greek letters you learned in Lessons 1 to 4.

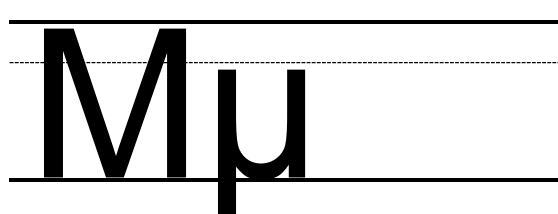
See page 225 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
Omega	

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

5.1 The Letters Μμ, Νν, Ξξ
Τὰ Γράμματα Μμ, Νν, Ξξ

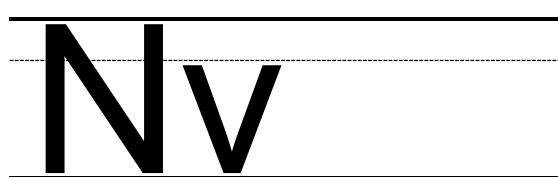


Name:	mu (<i>moo</i>)
Sound:	m in met \m\
Type:	Consonant

Mu is identical in sound to the M/m in the English alphabet. The upper-case Mu is identical in appearance to the English upper-case M. Do not confuse the lower-case Mu (μ) with the English lower-case letter u.

Note that the lower-case Mu has a tail that goes below the base line.

Mu sounds like the **m** in **met**.

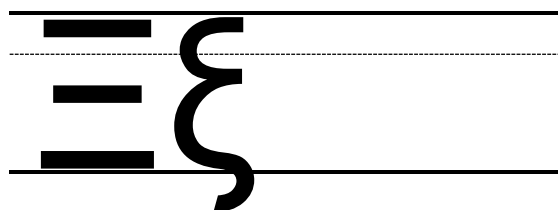


Name:	nu (<i>noo</i>)
Sound:	n in net \n\
Type:	Consonant

Nu is identical in sound to the N/n in the English alphabet. The upper-case Nu is identical in appearance to the English upper-case N. However, do not confuse the lower-case Nu (ν) with the English lower-case letter v. To help remember this lower case form, think of it as an upper-case Nu without the left leg.

When writing the lower-case Nu, be sure the bottom comes to a point and is not rounded.

Nu sounds like the **n** in **net**.



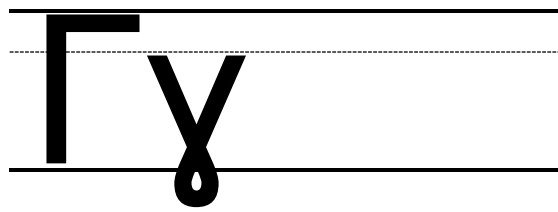
Name:	xi (<i>ksee</i>)
Sound:	ks in elks \ks\
Type:	Consonant

Xi does not look like any letter in the English alphabet, but it is identical in sound to the English letter X/x. Note that the lower-case Xi has a tail that goes below the base line.

Xi sounds like the **ks** in **elks**.

Xi is known as a “double letter” since it combines the sounds of \k\ and \s\.

5.2 Other Sounds for Gamma (Γγ)



Name:	gamma (<i>GHAM-mah</i>)
Sound:	gh in ghost \gh\ guttural y in yet \y\ (in γε γι γει) ng in sing \ŋ\ (in γγ γκ γξ γχ)
Type:	Consonant

In Section 2.4 you learned that Gamma has three common sounds in words. Which sound it makes depends on the vowel or consonant that follows it. So far you have only learned vocabulary words where Gamma sounds like a guttural **gh** in **ghost**. However, Gamma often sounds like the **y** in **yet**. This occurs when a single Gamma is followed by the vowels ε or ι, or the digraph ει. This does not apply to double Gammas (γγ). You will learn about the sound of double Gammas in Lesson 10.

5.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 5 Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Πέντε

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
11. είμι	I am	Verb	140
12. γεμίζω	I fill	Verb	8
13. λαμβάνω	I take, receive	Verb	258
14. έξω	outside	Adverb	63

Notes on the words:

11. είμι – Note the digraph ει that sounds like the i in ski. Note also that the smooth breathing mark is over the second letter of the digraph.

είμι a linking verb like the English verb “to be”. A linking verb renames or describes its subject. It links the subject to a subject complement (also called a predicate nominative). For example:

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Linking Verb</u>	<u>Subject Complement</u>
Ι	am	a student
έγώ	είμι	μαθητής (boy student)
έγώ	είμι	μαθήτρια (girl student)

Hear It



“While I am in the world, I am the light of the world.” (John 9:5)

Then Jesus spoke to them again saying, “I am the light of the world. The one who follows me will never walk in darkness, but will have the light of life.” (John 8:12)

12. γεμίζω – Note that the Gamma (γ) has the sound of the **y** in **yet**. See section 5.2.

Then a fierce gale arose, and the swells were rushing into the boat so that the boat was quickly filled. (Mark 4:37)

13. λαμβάνω.

“Truly, truly I say to you, the one who receives whomever I send, receives Me. And the one who receives Me, receives the one who sent Me.” (John 13:20)

14. ἔξω – An adverb of place.

English Derivative: Exoskeleton.

Now Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard and a servant girl approached him saying, “You also were with Jesus the Galilean.” (Matthew 26:69)

5.4 Something Extra – Long Greek Words

Greek words can get quite long. In fact, according to Guinness World Records, the longest word to ever appear in literature is a Greek word:

λοπαδο-τεμαχο-σελαχο-γαλεο-κρανιο-λειψανο-δριμ-υπο-τριμματο-σιλφιο-
καραβο-μελιτο-κατακεχυ-μενο-κιχλ-επικοσσυφο-φαττο-περιστερ-αλεκτρυον-
οππο-κεφαλλιο-κιγκλο-πελειο-λαγωο-σιραιο-βαφη-τραγανο-πτερύγων

It has 172 letters and 78 syllables. It appeared in a comedy written by Aristophanes in 391 B.C. According to the *Greek-English Lexicon* by Liddell and Scott (page 1061), it is a dish prepared from a variety of meats and sauces.

Fortunately, you will not run across a word that long in the New Testament. The longest Greek word in the New Testament is in Acts 10:41 and has only 20 letters. It means “the ones chosen beforehand”.

προκεχειροτονημένοις

🔊 Hear It

When you have learned the alphabet you will be able to easily pronounce this word because Koine Greek is a phonetic language (see page 12).

5.5 Something Extra – Vocabulary Word Search

This word search is just for fun. It contains all the words you learned through Lesson 5. Words are spelled across, up-and-down, and diagonally (but not backwards). You can check your answers by referring to page 204 in the Answer Key.

δ	γ	ᾶ	ἐ	γ	ὦ	β	ξ	ᾶ	θ
κ	ἕ	ε	λ	ζ	ῶ	ᾶ	ν	δ	ε
θ	ξ	μ	μ	ῆ	ᾶ	δ	κ	ι	ᾶ
γ	ω	ᾶ	γ	ί	θ	ί	ε	κ	λ
ῆ	ζ	ω	ῆ	μ	ζ	ε	ν	ί	δ
λ	α	μ	β	ᾶ	ν	ω	ι	α	ί
θ	ί	ᾶ	β	μ	ᾶ	ξ	ε	α	ε
α	ξ	κ	α	ί	β	ἕ	γ	θ	ί
λ	ᾶ	γ	ω	η	β	δ	ζ	ὦ	ν
γ	ᾶ	λ	β	κ	ᾶ	ε	ί	μ	ί

ἄββᾶ

ἄγω

ἀδικία

ἀλήθεια

γεμίζω

γῆ

ἐγώ

εἰμί

ἕξω

ζωή

θεά

καί

λαμβάνω

ῶδε

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **5.0 Lesson Review**.
-
- ☐ 2. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 3. In this lesson you will learn the letters Mu (Μμ), Nu (Νν), and Xi (Ξξ).
Watch video **5.1 The Letter Mu**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 72 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 4. Watch video **5.1 The Letter Nu**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 72 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 5. Watch video **5.1 The Letter Xi**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 72 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 6. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Μμ, Νν, and Ξξ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.
-
- ☐ 7. Watch video **5.0 John 14:6** and practice reciting the verse.

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Read section **5.1 The Letters Μμ, Νν, Ξξ**.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters Μμ, Νν, Ξξ.
- ☐ 3. Use the **Μμ, Νν, Ξξ Worksheet** on page 74 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 4. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Μμ, Νν, and Ξξ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
- ☐ 5. Read section **5.2 Other Sounds for Gamma (Γγ)**.
- ☐ 6. Watch video **5.2 Other Sounds for Gamma (Γγ)**.
- ☐ 7. Read section **5.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 5**.
- ☐ 8. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 5.
- ☐ 9. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 5. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the feminine article ἡ.
- ☐ 10. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words to fill the lines. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

εἶμι

γεμίζω

λαμβάνω

ἔξω

- ☐ 11. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 5.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources.

Mμ, Nν, Ξξ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Mu: Write it as you would an English upper-case M.

M M M M

Lower-Case Mu: Begin at the star and write the letter in a single continuous stroke without lifting your pen. The left vertical line begins below the base line. The right vertical line stops at the base line.

μ μ μ μ μ μ

μ μ μ μ μ μ

Upper-Case Nu: Write it as you would an English upper-case N.

N N N N

Lower-Case Nu: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. Be sure the bottom is pointed and not rounded.

ν ν ν ν ν ν

ν ν ν ν ν ν

Upper-Case Xi: Draw three horizontal lines. Make the middle line slightly shorter.

Ξ Ξ Ξ Ξ Ξ

Lower-Case Xi: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.

ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ

ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 5.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Μμ, Νν, and Ξξ.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 5.
- ☐ *5. Review the Greek words below and determine whether the Gamma is pronounced like the **gh** in **ghost** or the **y** in **yet**. See the top of page 68 for help. Write “gh” or “y” on the line to indicate your choice. You are not expected to memorize these words, but you are able to pronounce them because they contain only letters that you know.

_____ λέγω	(I say)	_____ ἀγαλλιάω	(I exult)
_____ ἡγεμὼν	(governor)	_____ γενεά	(family)
_____ λεγιών	(legion)	_____ ἀγωγή	(way of life)
_____ γαμέω	(I marry)	_____ γεννάω	(I beget)
_____ μαγεία	(magic)	_____ καταλλαγή	(reconciliation)

 Hear It

- ☐ 6. Use the **Μμ, Νν, Ξξ Worksheet** on page 76 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 7. Read John 11:20-27 from the New Testament.

In the verses prior to what you read, we learn that Lazarus, a friend of Jesus, died. Jesus arrives in his town four days after his death. Martha, a sister of Lazarus, goes to meet Jesus. She knows that if Jesus had come earlier he could have healed her brother. Part of Jesus response to her in verse 25 is shown below. The rest of the story is in verses 28 to 45.

Greek Text: ἐγὼ εἰμί ἡ ἀνάστασις καὶ ἡ ζωή

Word-for-Word Gloss: _____ resurrection _____

 Hear It

- ➡ Find and circle your vocabulary word εἰμί in the Greek text shown above.
- ➡ Write the gloss under each Greek word where there is a blank space (6 words).
- ➡ How many times is the digraph αι in this text? ____ ει? ____ (=2)

- ☐ 8. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words on the blank line. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

εἰμί · γεμίζω · λαμβάνω · ἔξω

Mμ, Nν, Ξξ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Mu: Write it as you would an English upper-case M.

M M M M

Lower-Case Mu: Begin at the star and write the letter in a single continuous stroke without lifting your pen. The left vertical line begins below the base line. The right vertical line stops at the base line.

μ μ μ μ μ μ

μ μ μ μ μ μ

Upper-Case Nu: Write it as you would an English upper-case N.

N N N N

Lower-Case Nu: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. Be sure the bottom is pointed and not rounded.

ν ν ν ν ν ν

ν ν ν ν ν ν

Upper-Case Xi: Draw three horizontal lines. Make the middle line slightly shorter.

Ξ Ξ Ξ Ξ Ξ

Lower-Case Xi: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen.

ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ

ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ ξ

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Μμ, Νν, and Ξξ.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 5.
- ☐ *3. Krazy Koine: The Greek letters in the left column are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word. Pronounce each Krazy Koine word and decide if the sound matches A, B or C. Circle the correct answer.

	A	B	C
αξ	ax	ox	as
γελ	gel	yell	get
μηξ	makes	maze	meek
ελξ	elf	else	elks
μεθ	meth	met	math
νηβει	navel	navy	novel
ωξ	oaks	oaf	oz
μεμω	meow	mime	memo

	A	B	C
δεν	den	than	then
μηλ	mean	male	meal
μηζ	maze	max	makes
ναικ	vex	vail	neck
θιβ	thee	thieve	fib
γεν	gave	yen	yon
μεν	men	mauve	main
μην	men	mauve	main

- ☐ 4. Practice writing the Greek letter sequences below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies to fill the rest of the line. As you write the letter, say its name aloud.

M N Ξ

μ ν ξ

- ☐ 5. Complete section **5.5 Something Extra – Vocabulary Word Search**.
- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 5 Knowledge Check A** on page 78 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 5 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 5.

See page 224 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the "Sounds Like" Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____

Write the English gloss for the words below.

See page 227 to check your answers.

5. ἡ γῆ _____
6. ἡ ζωή _____
7. ἡ θεά _____
8. ἡ ἀδικία _____
9. ἡ ἀλήθεια _____
10. καί _____
11. εἰμί _____
12. γεμίζω _____
13. λαμβάνω _____
14. ἔξω _____

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 5.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Μμ, Νν, and Ξξ.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 5.
- ☐ 5. Practice writing the words below. Trace over the grey outlines and then write additional copies of the words to fill the lines. As you write each word, say it and its gloss aloud.

εἶμι

γεμίζω

λαμβάνω

ἔξω

- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 5 Knowledge Check B** on page 80 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ 7. Read section **5.4 Something Extra – Long Greek Words**.

Lesson 5 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 15 Greek letters you learned in Lessons 1 to 5.

See page 225 to check your answers.

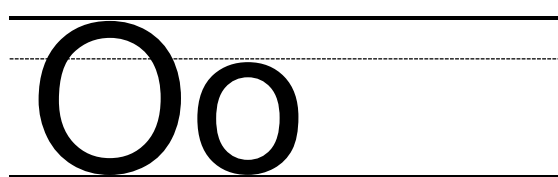
Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
Omega	

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

6.1 The Letters Οο, Ππ, Ρρ
Τὰ Γράμματα Οο, Ππ, Ρρ

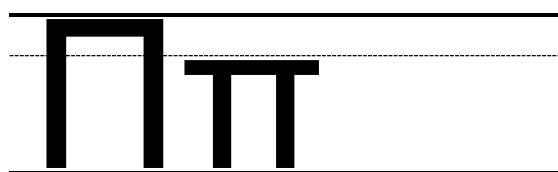


Name:	omicron (<i>oh mee-KROHN</i>)
Sound:	o in go \ō\
Type:	Vowel

The upper-case and lower-case Omicron are identical in appearance to the upper-case and lower case O/o in the English alphabet.

The name Omicron means “small o”.

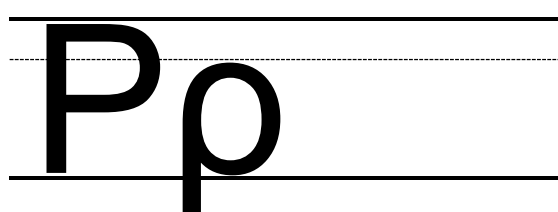
Omicron always sounds like the **o** in **go**. It is identical in sound to Omega.



Name:	pi (<i>pee</i>)
Sound:	p in spin \p\ b in bet \b\ (in μπ)
Type:	Consonant

Pi does not look like any letter in the English alphabet. However, you are probably familiar with the letter from math class. The letter Pi is used to represent the ratio of the circumference of any circle to the diameter of that circle. Regardless of a circle’s size, this ratio is always approximately 3.14. In math, the letter is pronounced “pie”, but in Koine Greek it is pronounced “pea”.

The primary sound of Pi is like the **p** in **spin**, but not the **p** in **pin** – it is not aspirated. It occasionally sounds like the **b** in **bet** when it comes after the Greek letter Mu.



Name:	rho (<i>roh</i>)
Sound:	r in rest \r\ trilled
Type:	Consonant

Rho looks like the English letter P/p, but it is actually similar in sound to the English letter R/r. So be careful not to confuse Rho with the English letter P/p.

Note that the lower-case Rho has a tail that goes below the base line.

The sound of Rho is trilled or rolled and always sounds like the **r** in **rest**.

6.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 6

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Έξ

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
15. πέμπω	I send	Verb	79
16. ὁ ἀνὴρ	man, husband	Noun	216
17. ἡ παραβολή	parable	Noun	50

Notes on the words:

In Section 3.2 (page 39) you learned that Greek nouns have grammatical gender – they are masculine, feminine or neuter. The gender of a word is learned from its dictionary form (lemma) which has the Greek article “the” to identify its gender:

ὁ (masculine)

ἡ (feminine)

τό (neuter)

Nouns in the vocabulary list are preceded by the Greek article so that you know the word’s gender. So far you have only learned feminine nouns. In this lesson you will begin to learn masculine nouns. Always include the Greek article (ὁ, ἡ, or τό) on your vocabulary cards.

15. πέμπω – This verb includes both sounds of the letter Pi. The first Pi sounds like the **p** in **spin** and the second Pi sounds like the **b** in **bet**.

English Derivatives: Pomp.

“Truly, truly, I say to you, the one who hears My message, and believes Him who sent Me, has eternal life, and does not come into judgment, but has crossed over from death to life.” (John 5:24)

16. ὁ ἀνὴρ – A masculine noun. It can mean “man” or “husband” depending on the context.

English Derivative: Android.

“Therefore, everyone who hears these words of Mine, and does them, will be like a wise man who built his house on the rock.” (Matthew 7:24)

Husbands, love your wives, as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for her. (Ephesians 5:25)

17. ἡ παραβολή – A feminine noun. This word has all three of the new letters from this lesson.

English Derivative: Parable, parabolic.

A parable is a short descriptive story used to teach a moral or spiritual lesson. About one third of Jesus’ teachings recorded in the Gospels are in the form of parables.

Jesus presented another parable to them, saying, “The kingdom of heaven is like a man who sowed good seed in his field.” (Matthew 13:24)

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 2. In this lesson you will learn the letters Omicron (Oo), Pi (Ππ), and Rho (Pp).
Watch video **6.1 The Letter Omicron**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 84 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 3. Watch video **6.1 The Letter Pi**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 84 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 4. Watch video **6.1 The Letter Rho**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 84 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 5. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Oo, Ππ, and Pp.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.
-
- ☐ 6. Watch video **5.0 John 14:6** and practice reciting the verse.
-

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Read section **6.1 The Letters Oo, Ππ, Pp**.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters Oo, Ππ, Pp.
- ☐ 3. Use the **Oo, Ππ, Pp Worksheet** on page 86 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 4. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Oo, Ππ, and Pp.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
- ☐ 5. Watch video **6.2 Masculine Nouns**.
- ☐ 6. Read section **6.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 6**.
- ☐ 7. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 6.
- ☐ 8. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 6. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article.
- ☐ 9. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 6.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources.
- ☐ 10. Practice writing the words below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing two additional copies of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

πέμπω

ὁ ἀνὴρ

ἡ παραβολή

Oo, Ππ, Pp Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Omicron: Write it as you would an English upper-case O.



Lower-Case Omicron: Write it as you would an English lower-case o.



Upper-Case Pi: There are two ways to write the Pi: 1) Write the top horizontal stroke first, and then write the left leg and then the right leg. 2) Write the left leg and then the right leg, and then write the top horizontal stroke.



Lower-Case Pi: Follow the instructions for the upper-case Pi.



Upper-Case Rho: Write it as you would an English upper-case P (but it sounds like the r in rest).



Lower-Case Rho: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. Note that the tail begins below the base line.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 6.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Oo, Ππ, and Pp.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 6.
- ☐ *5. Review the Greek words below and determine whether the Pi is pronounced like the **p** in **spin** or the **b** in **bet**. See page 81 for help. Write “p” or “b” on the line to indicate your choice. You are not expected to memorize these words, but you are able to pronounce them because they contain only letters and sounds you know.

_____ ἀμπελών (vineyard)

_____ ἐμπαίζω (I mock)

_____ βλέπω (I see)

_____ ἐμπλοκή (braid)

_____ ἀγάπη (love)

_____ πίπτω (I fall)

_____ λάμπω (I shine)

_____ πίνω (I drink)

_____ ἐλπίζω (I hope)

_____ ἐμπνέω (I breathe)

 Hear It

- ☐ 6. Use the **Oo, Ππ, Pp Worksheet** on page 88 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 7. Practice writing the words below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing two additional copies of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

πέμπτω

ὁ ἀνὴρ

ἡ παραβολή

Oo, Ππ, Pp Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Omicron: Write it as you would an English upper-case O.



Lower-Case Omicron: Write it as you would an English lower-case o.



Upper-Case Pi: There are two ways to write the Pi: 1) Write the top horizontal stroke first, and then write the left leg and then the right leg. 2) Write the left leg and then the right leg, and then write the top horizontal stroke.



Lower-Case Pi: Follow the instructions for the upper-case Pi.



Upper-Case Rho: Write it as you would an English upper-case P (but it sounds like the r in rest).



Lower-Case Rho: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. Note that the tail begins below the base line.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Oo, Ππ, and Pp.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 6.
- ☐ *3. Krazy Koine: The Greek letters in the left column are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word. Pronounce each Krazy Koine word and decide if the sound matches A, B or C. Circle the correct answer. For this exercise do not trill or roll the letter Rho.

	A	B	C		A	B	C
μάμπο	mamba	campo	mambo	ρογ	Roy	rogue	pug
ποκ	pock	poke	book	οθ	oath	oat	odd
μο	mow	no	ma	ζον	love	dove	zone
ρηξ	pays	rex	rakes	δο	though	do	dough
ρομ	roam	pom	poo	πόνι	rove	move	pony
πηβ	babe	pave	pub	μον	moon	moan	move
δερ	dear	there	deep	κάμπο	campo	combo	compo
γελ	gel	get	yell	πιβ	peeve	bib	nib
ρήνει	rainy	penny	peavey	έξπέλ	easel	excel	expel

Krazy Koine Challenge: Pronounce these Krazy Koine words and write the English word they sound like.

Ρόμιο: _____ ζάμπι: _____ ρεικάπι: _____

- ☐ 4. Practice writing the Greek letter sequences below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies to fill the rest of the line. As you write the letter, say its name aloud.

Ο Π Ρ

ο π ρ

- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 6 Knowledge Check A** on page 90 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 6 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 6.

See page 224 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the "Sounds Like" Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____ Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____

Write the English gloss for the words below.

See page 227 to check your answers.

8. ἡ ἀδικία _____
9. ἡ ἀλήθεια _____
10. καί _____
11. εἰμί _____
12. γεμίζω _____
13. λαμβάνω _____
14. ἔξω _____
15. πέμπω _____
16. ὁ ἀνὴρ _____
17. ἡ παραβολή _____

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 6.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Oo, Ππ, and Pp.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 6.
- ☐ 4. Write the gloss for each word in the blank space below the ruled area. Then practice writing each word by tracing over the grey outlines. Write two additional copies of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

πέμπω

ὁ ἀνὴρ

ἡ παραβολή

- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 6 Knowledge Check B** on page 92 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ 6. Watch video **5.0 John 14:6** and practice reciting the verse.

Lesson 6 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 18 Greek letters you learned in Lessons 1 to 6.

You can check your answers by referring to page 225 in the Answer Key.

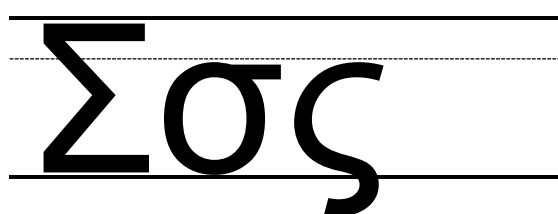
Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
Omega	

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

7.1 The Letters Σσς, Ττ, Υυ
Τὰ Γράμματα Σσς, Ττ, Υυ

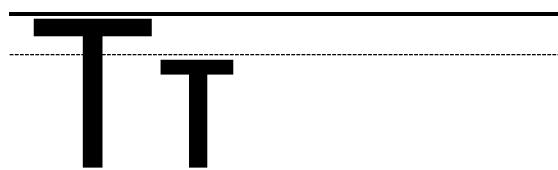


Name:	sigma (<i>SEEGH-mah</i>)
Sound:	s in set \s\
Type:	Consonant

Sigma is equivalent to the S/s in the English alphabet.

The lower-case Sigma has two forms. ς is called a **final Sigma** and is used only at the end of words. Elsewhere it is written as σ. Note that the tail of the final sigma goes below the base line. Be careful not to confuse the lower-case sigma (σ) with the lower-case omicron (ο).

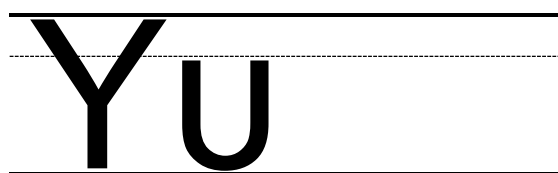
Sigma always sounds like the **s** in **set**.



Name:	tau (<i>tahv</i>)
Sound:	t in star \t\ d in den \d\ (in ντ)
Type:	Consonant

Tau looks like and is equivalent to the T/t in the English alphabet.

The primary sound of Tau is like the **t** in **star**, but not the **t** in **tar** – it is not aspirated. It sounds like the **d** in **den** when it comes after the Greek letter Nu (ν). This is similar to English pronunciation when a **t** comes after an **n**. For example, many people pronounce the word dentist as dendist – softening the **t** to a **d**.



Name:	upsilon (<i>OO psee-LONE</i>)
Sound:	u in flu \ü\ v in vet \v\ (in αυ ευ ηυ)
Type:	Vowel

The upper-case Upsilon looks like the English upper-case Y, but that is the only resemblance. Upsilon is a vowel that is somewhat similar to the U/u in the English alphabet.

Scholars have various opinions about the sound of Upsilon. The exact primary sound of the letter Upsilon does not exist in English. In Koine Greek it might have been equivalent to the French vowel **u** as in the French word **du**. The **u** in **flu** is a sufficient approximation of the sound when pronounced with your lips tightly rounded and your tongue touching the tops of your lower front teeth.

7.2 More About Upsilon

Vowel Combinations **αυ**, **ευ**, and **ηυ**

As noted in Section 7.1 above, the primary sound of Upsilon is like the **u** in **flu**. However, in the vowel combinations **αυ**, **ευ**, and **ηυ** it sounds like the **v** in **vet**.

This was not always the case, but by the time of Koine Greek the Upsilon had shifted to a consonantal \v\ sound in these three vowel combinations. So, what you need to know to pronounce these vowel combinations is that they sound like the following examples:

αυ sounds like the **av** in **lava** \ä́v\
ευ sounds like the **ev** in **ever** \ev\
ηυ sounds like the **av** in **nave** \ā́v\

In other words, these vowel combinations are pronounced using the primary sounds of **α** (**a** as in **spa**), **ε** (**e** as in **end**), or **η** (**e** as in **olé**) followed by a \v\ sound.

If these vowel combinations have a breathing mark and/or accent mark in a word, the mark is always written over the second vowel Upsilon. They are treated like a unit just like digraphs (see Section 4.2 on page 54). For example:

εὕρίσκω
I find

7.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 7

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Έπτά

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
18. ὁ διδάσκαλος	teacher	Noun	59
19. ὁ σταυρός	cross	Noun	27
20. ἡ γυνή	woman, wife	Noun	215
21. τεσσεράκοντα	forty	Number	22

Notes on the words:

18. ὁ διδάσκαλος – A masculine noun. This noun has the regular sigma (σ) and the final sigma (ς).
English Derivative: Didactic.

“A student is not above the teacher. But everyone, when fully trained, will be like his teacher.” (Luke 6:40)

19. ὁ σταυρός – A masculine noun. The Upsilon sounds like the **v** in **vet** (see pages 93 and 94). Be sure to listen to the pronunciation of this word in the vocabulary resources. This noun has the regular sigma (σ) at the beginning and the final sigma (ς) at the end.

Now Pilate also wrote an inscription of charges and put it on the cross. It said: “Jesus the Nazarene, the King of the Jews.” (John 19:19)

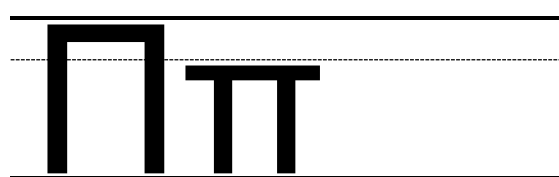
20. ἡ γυνή – A feminine noun. The Gamma sounds like the **gh** in **ghost** (see page 26). It can mean “woman” or “wife” depending on the context.
English Derivatives: Gynecology, misogynist.

Then *Jesus* said to the woman, “Your faith has saved you. Go in peace.” (Luke 7:50)
Husbands, love your wives, as Christ also loved the church and gave Himself for her. (Ephesians 5:25)

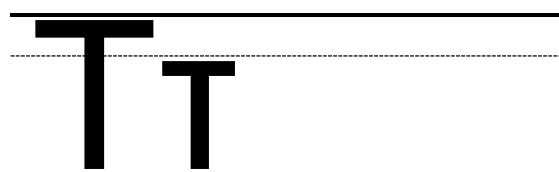
21. τεσσεράκοντα – This word includes both sounds of the letter Tau. The first Tav sounds like the **t** in **star** and the second Tau sounds like the **d** in **den** (see page 93).

He was in the wilderness forty days, being tempted by Satan. He was among the wild animals, and the angels were ministering to him. (Mark 1:13)

7.4 Something Extra – Why Do Pi and Tav Have Alternate Sounds? (Advanced Information)



Name:	pi (<i>pee</i>)
Sound:	p in spin \p\ b in bet \b\ (in μπτ)
Type:	Consonant



Name:	tau (<i>tahv</i>)
Sound:	t in star \t\ d in den \d\ (in ντ)
Type:	Consonant

Pi (π) can sound like the **p** in **spin** or the **b** in **bet**. Tau (τ) can sound like the **t** in **star** or the **d** in **den**. Why do Pi and Tau have these alternate sounds? To answer this, let's first define some terms using English letters as examples.

In phonetics, the **p**, **b**, **t**, and **d** sounds are called **stops** because we use some part of our vocal tract to momentarily stop the flow of air when we produce these sounds – the lips for **p** and **b** and the teeth for **t** and **d**. Say these sounds and notice how your lips are involved in **p** and **b** and your teeth in **t** and **d**.

The **b** and **d** sounds are also called **voiced** sounds because we use our vocal cords to produce them. The **p** and **t** sounds are called **unvoiced** sounds because we do not use our vocal cords to produce them.

So, **p/b** are an unvoiced/voiced pair of sounds shaped by the lips, and **t/d** are an unvoiced/voiced pair of sounds shaped by the teeth.

The **m** and **n** sounds are called **nasals** because air is partially expelled through the nose when they are pronounced. To feel how this works, hold your hand under your nose and above your upper lip. Say the words “mice” and “nice”. You should feel a little bit of air escaping through your nose. The **m** and **n** sounds are also voiced sounds.

So, sometimes when **n** comes before **t** in a word, the voiced **n** sound blends with the unvoiced **t** sound to morph it into a voiced **d** sound. An example of this in English is the word dentist, which is often mispronounced as dendist – the **t** sound is replaced by the **d** sound.

Sometimes the same thing happens when **m** comes before **p**. The voiced **m** sound blends with the unvoiced **p** sound to morph it into a voiced **b** sound. An example of this in English is the word bumper, which is often mispronounced as bumber – the **p** sound is replaced by the **b** sound.

This is what always happens in Greek. Pi (π) after Mu (μ - **m** sound) morphs to a **b** sound. Tau (τ) after Nu (ν - **n** sound) morphs to a **d** sound. So, always be aware of μπτ and ντ letter combinations.

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 2. In this lesson you will learn the letters Sigma (Σσς), Tau (Ττ), and Upsilon (Υυ). Watch video **7.1 The Letter Sigma**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 98 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 3. Watch video **7.1 The Letter Tau**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 98 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 4. Watch video **7.1 The Letter Upsilon**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 98 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.
-
- ☐ 5. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Σσς, Ττ, and Υυ. Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization. If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.
-
- ☐ 6. Watch video **5.0 John 14:6** and practice reciting the verse.
-

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Read section **7.1 The Letters Σςς, Ττ, Υυ**.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters Σςς, Ττ, Υυ.
- ☐ 3. Use the **Σςς, Ττ, Υυ Worksheet** on page 100 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 4. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Σςς, Ττ, and Υυ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
- ☐ 5. Read section **7.2 More About Upsilon**.
- ☐ 6. Read section **7.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 7**.
- ☐ 7. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 7.
- ☐ 8. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 7. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article.
- ☐ 9. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 7.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources.
- ☐ 10. Practice writing the words below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing one additional copy of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ὁ διδάσκαλος

ὁ σταυρός

ἡ γυνή

τεσσεράκοντα

Σσ, Ττ, Υυ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Sigma: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous zig-zag stroke without lifting your pen.



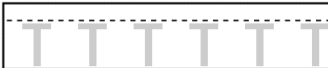
Lower-Case Sigma: For either form, begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. Note that the final sigma ends below the base line.



Upper-Case Tau: Write it as you would an English upper-case T.



Lower-Case Tau: Write it like a smaller version of the English upper-case T.



Upper-Case Upsilon: Write it as you would an English upper-case Y (but it sounds like the **u** in **flu**).



Lower-Case Upsilon: Begin at the star and write the letter as you would an English lower-case u without the right vertical stroke. Make the bottom rounded so that it is not confused with the lower-case Nu (ν).



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 7.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Σς, Ττ, and Υυ.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 7.
- ☐ *5. Review the Greek words below and determine whether the Tau is pronounced like the **t** in **star** or the **d** in **den**. See page 93 for help. Write “t” or “d” on the line to indicate your choice. You are not expected to memorize these words, but you are able to pronounce them because they contain only letters and sounds you know.

_____	ἐντολή	(commandment)	_____	θάνατος	(death)
_____	πίστις	(faith)	_____	πέντε	(five)
_____	ἁμαρτία	(sin)	_____	ἀντί	(instead of)
_____	βροντή	(thunder)	_____	ἄρτος	(bread)
_____	βαλλάντιον	(money bag)	_____	ἀντίδικος	(adversary)

 Hear It

- ☐ 6. Use the **Σς, Ττ, Υυ Worksheet** on page 102 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 7. Practice writing the words below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing one additional copy of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ὁ διδάσκαλος

ὁ σταυρός

ἡ γυνή

τεσσεράκοντα

Σσ, Ττ, Υυ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Sigma: Begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous zig-zag stroke without lifting your pen.



Lower-Case Sigma: For either form, begin at the star and write the letter in a continuous stroke without lifting your pen. Note that the final sigma ends below the base line.



Upper-Case Tau: Write it as you would an English upper-case T.



Lower-Case Tau: Write it like a smaller version of the English upper-case T.



Upper-Case Upsilon: Write it as you would an English upper-case Y (but it sounds like the **u** in **flu**).



Lower-Case Upsilon: Begin at the star and write the letter as you would an English lower-case u without the right vertical stroke. Make the bottom rounded so that it is not confused with the lower-case Nu (ν).



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Σς, Ττ, and Υυ.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 7.
- ☐ *3. Krazy Koine: The Greek letters in the left column are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word. Pronounce each Krazy Koine word and decide if the sound matches A or B. Circle the correct answer.

	A	B		A	B		A	B
σουτ	soot	suit	ρευ	rev	pew	μεντ	mend	meant
σεντ	send	sent	σαξ	socks	sack	ρεντ	rend	rent
κυπ	coop	cup	τρέντι	twenty	trendy	νυς	news	noose
λευι	levy	Louie	βεντ	bent	vend	κωτς	coats	cots
ρυθ	root	Ruth	πις	peace	peas	σηυ	sew	save

Krazy Koine Challenge: Pronounce these Krazy Koine words and write the English word they sound like.

ἐξτέντζ: _____ ἴβεν: _____ σίκωστ: _____

- ☐ *4. Review the Greek words below and determine whether the Upsilon is pronounced like the **u** in **flu** or the **v** in **vet**. See pages 93 and 94 for help. Write “u” or “v” on the line to indicate your choice. You are not expected to memorize these words, but you are able to pronounce them because they contain only letters and sounds you know.

_____	ἄλευρον	(wheat flour)	_____	θαυμάζω	(I marvel)
_____	λευκός	(white)	_____	συκῆ	(fig tree)
_____	θυγάτηρ	(daughter)	_____	ἐλευθερία	(freedom)
_____	ξύλον	(wood, tree)	_____	μυστήριον	(mystery)
_____	Δαυίδ	(David)	_____	καυματίζω	(I burn up)

 Hear It

- ☐ 5. Watch video **5.0 John 14:6** and practice reciting the verse.
- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 7 Knowledge Check A** on page 104 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 7 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 7.

See page 224 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the "Sounds Like" Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____ Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____ Sounds like the _____ in _____

Write the English gloss for the words below.

See page 227 to check your answers.

11. εἶμί _____
12. γεμίζω _____
13. λαμβάνω _____
14. ἔξω _____
15. πέμπω _____
16. ὁ ἀνὴρ _____
17. ἡ παραβολή _____
18. ὁ διδάσκαλος _____
19. ὁ σταυρός _____
20. ἡ γυνή _____
21. τεσσεράκοντα _____

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Watch video **7.0 Vocabulary Review**.
- ☐ 3. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 7.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Σς, Ττ, and Υυ.
- ☐ 5. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 7.
- ☐ 6. Write the gloss for each word in the blank space below the ruled area. Then practice writing each word by tracing over the grey outlines. Write one additional copy of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ὁ διδάσκαλος

ὁ σταυρός

ἡ γυνή

τεσσεράκοντα

- ☐ 7. Complete **Lesson 7 Knowledge Check B** on page 106 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ 8. Read section **7.4 Something Extra – Why Do Pi and Tav Have Alternate Sounds?**

Lesson 7 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 21 Greek letters you learned in Lessons 1 to 7.

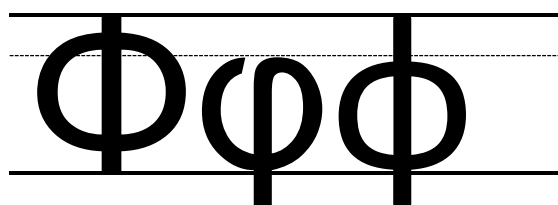
You can check your answers by referring to page 225 in the Answer Key.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
		Omega	

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

8.1 The Letters Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ
Τὰ Γράμματα Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ

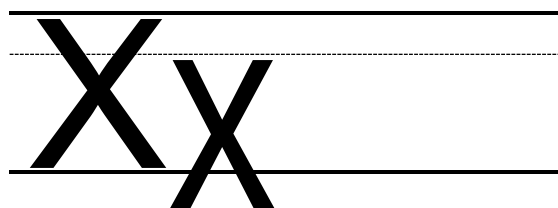


Name:	phi (<i>fee</i>)
Sound:	ph in photo \f\
Type:	Consonant

Phi does not look like any letter in the English alphabet.

There is an alternate way of writing the lower-case form as shown above.

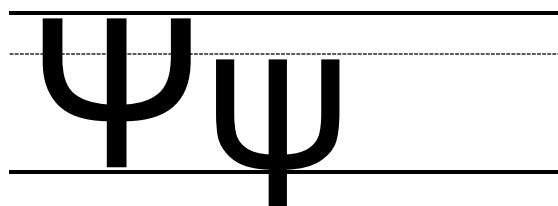
Phi always sounds like the **ph** in **photo**.



Name:	chi (<i>khee</i>)
Sound:	ch in loch \k\
Type:	Consonant

Chi looks like X/x in the English alphabet but it is not the same letter.

Chi always sounds like the **ch** in **loch** with a Scottish accent.



Name:	psi (<i>psee</i>)
Sound:	ps in steps \ps\
Type:	Consonant

Psi does not look like any letter in the English alphabet. It looks like the trident of the Greek god of the sea, Poseidon.

Psi always sounds like the **ps** in **steps**.

Psi is known as a “double letter” since it combines the sounds of \p\ and \s\.

8.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 8

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Ὀκτώ

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
22. ἔχω	I have, hold	Verb	708
23. ἡ ὁδός	way, road	Noun	101
24. ἡ ψυχὴ	soul, life	Noun	103
25. τὸ φῶς	light	Noun	73

Notes on the words:

In Section 3.2 (page 39) you learned that Greek nouns have grammatical gender – they are masculine, feminine or neuter. The gender of a word is learned from its dictionary form (lemma) which has the Greek article “the” to identify its gender:

ὁ (masculine)

ἡ (feminine)

τό (neuter)

Nouns in the vocabulary list are preceded by the Greek article so that you know the word’s gender. In this lesson you will begin to learn neuter nouns. Always include the Greek article (ὁ, ἡ, or τό) on your vocabulary cards.

22. ἔχω.

Jesus said to them, “How many loaves of bread do you have?” And *the disciples* said, “Seven and a few small fish.” (Matthew 15:34)

23. ἡ ὁδός – A feminine noun.

English Derivatives: Odometer, diode.

And it came about that as *Jesus* drew near to Jericho, a certain blind man was sitting by the road, begging. (Luke 18:35)

Oh, the depth of the riches of God’s wisdom and knowledge! How unsearchable are His judgments and unfathomable His ways! (Romans 11:33)

24. ἡ ψυχὴ – A feminine noun.

English Derivatives: Psychology, psyche.

No one has greater love than this: to lay down one’s life for one’s friends. (John 15:13)

25. τὸ φῶς – A neuter noun. Note the circumflex accent.

English Derivatives: Photography, photon, phosphorus (a light-bearing element).

This is the message we heard from Him and make known to you: God is light. In Him there is absolutely no darkness. (1 John 1:5)

8.3 Iota Subscript

The vowels Alpha (α), Eta (η), and Omega (ω) sometimes have a small Iota written beneath them when these letters occur at the end of a word. They look like this:

ἀληθείᾱ ζωῇ διδασκάλῳ

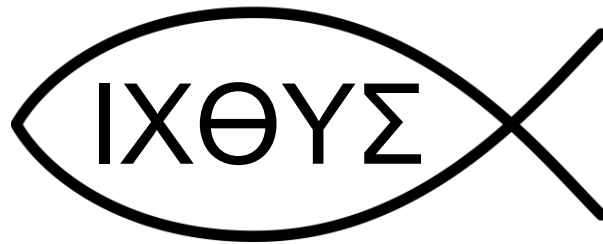
This is called an Iota Subscript and the Iota is not pronounced.¹

The Iota Subscript is part of the proper spelling of a word and identifies the grammatical use of the word in a sentence. You will learn more about this if you take a beginning Greek course. For now, it is only necessary to remember that the Iota Subscript does not affect how these three letters are pronounced.

¹When Alpha (α), Eta (η), and Omega (ω) are long vowels and followed by Iota, the Iota is written beneath or “subscripted” under the vowel.

8.4 Something Extra - The Fish Symbol

Now that you have learned all the letters of the Ἑλληνικὸς Ἀλφάβητος, you can understand the meaning of the Christian fish symbol. You have probably seen this symbol on a car bumper:



The symbol is a fish, and the upper-case Greek letters spell the Greek word for fish - ἰχθύς. You should recognize these letters. This was a secret sign used by the early persecuted Christians to identify themselves as believers to other believers and to mark meeting places.

The letters in the word fish are an acronym that refer to names and titles of Jesus:

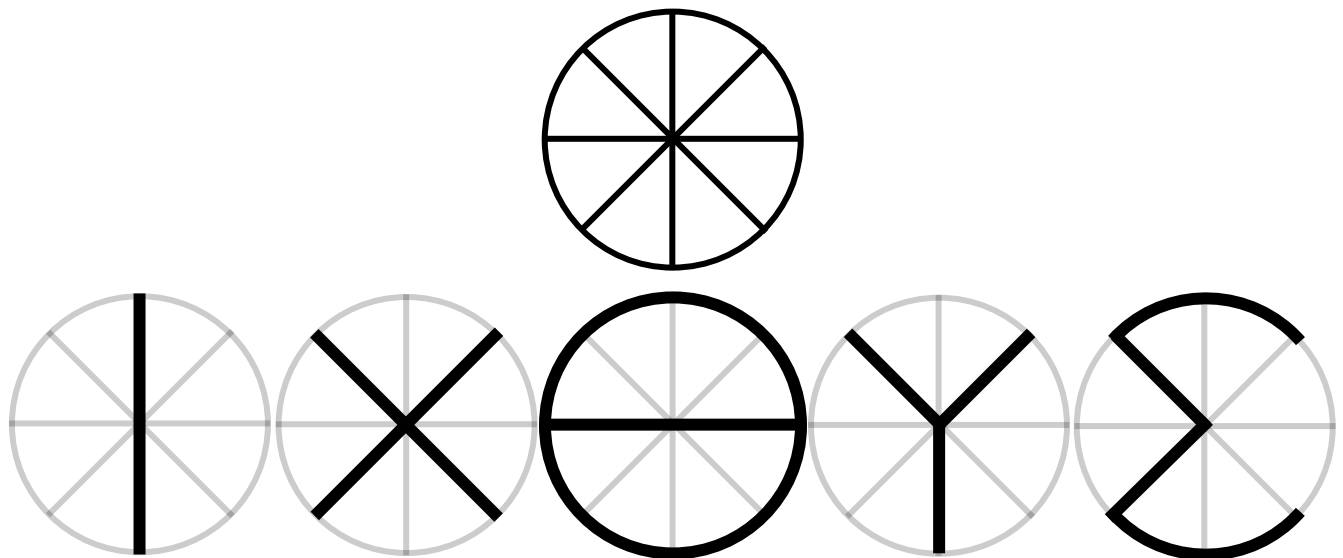
Ἰησοῦς	Jesus
Χριστός	Christ
Θεοῦ	God's
Υἱός	Son
Σωτήρ	Savior

🔊 Hear It

Ἰησοῦς Χριστός, Θεοῦ Υἱός, Σωτήρ

The fish had significance to the early Christians because several of the disciples were fisherman, Jesus called them to be “fishers of men” (Mark 1:16-18), and fish show up in a number of incidents and parables recorded in the New Testament.

The acronym was later adapted into a wheel shape:



Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.

 - ☐ 2. In this lesson you will learn the letters Phi (Φφ), Chi (Χχ), and Psi (Ψψ).
Watch video **8.1 The Letter Phi**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 112 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.

 - ☐ 3. Watch video **8.1 The Letter Chi**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 112 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.

 - ☐ 4. Watch video **8.1 The Letter Psi**. Use the **Writing Practice Worksheet** on page 112 to practice writing the letter. Each time you write the letter, say its name aloud.

 - ☐ 5. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Φφ, Χχ, and Ψψ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online alphabet resources.

 - ☐ 6. Watch video **5.0 John 14:6** and practice reciting the verse.

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Read section **8.1 The Letters Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ**.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ.
- ☐ 3. Use the **Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ Worksheet** on page 114 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 4. Work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Φφ, Χχ, and Ψψ.
Use your Alphabet Flash Cards to help with memorization.
- ☐ 5. Watch Video **8.2 Neuter Nouns**.
- ☐ 6. Read section **8.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 8**.
- ☐ 7. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 8.
- ☐ 8. Read section **8.3 Iota Subscript**.
- ☐ 9. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 8. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article.
- ☐ 10. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 8.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources.
- ☐ 11. Practice writing the words below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing two additional copies of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ἐχῶ

ἡ ὁδός

ἡ ψυχὴ

τὸ φῶς

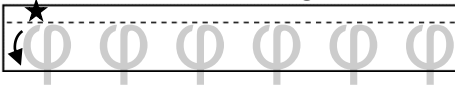
Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Phi: Draw a circle and then draw a vertical line through the middle. The vertical line should not go above the top line or below the base line, but it does go slightly above and below the circle.



Lower-Case Phi: There are two common ways to write the lower-case Phi. For the first way, begin at the star and write the letter in one continuous stroke without lifting your pen. For the second way, draw a circle and then draw a vertical line through the middle. Note that for both ways the vertical line goes below the base line.



Upper-Case Chi: Write it as you would an English upper-case X (but it sounds like the **ch** in **loch**).



Lower-Case Chi: Write it as you would an English lower-case x (but it sounds like the **ch** in **loch**). Note that the bottom of the Chi goes below the base line.



Upper-Case Psi: Draw a u shape and then draw a vertical line through the middle.



Lower-Case Psi: The lower-case Psi is a smaller version of the upper-case Psi. Note that the bottom of the vertical line goes below the base line.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Try to write each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Listen to the pronunciation of the alphabet letters and vocabulary words for Lesson 8.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Φφ, Χχ, and Ψψ.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 8.
- ☐ 5. The phrase from John 14:6 shown below should be familiar to you by now. Read the phrase aloud several times, focusing on accurate pronunciation rather than speed. If you need help with reading the phrase, watch video **5.0 John 14:6** or listen to the **Hear It** audio. In the blank space below the phrase, copy the phrase two times and then write the gloss.

ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωὴ

 Hear It

- ☐ 6. Use the **Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ Worksheet** on page 116 to practice writing the Greek letters.
- ☐ 7. Practice writing the words below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing two additional copies of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ἔχω

ἡ ψυχὴ

τὸ φῶς

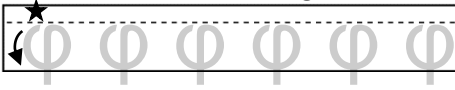
Φφ, Χχ, Ψψ Worksheet

Practice writing each letter by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing additional copies of the letter to fill the line. For some letters, a star (★) marks the starting point and arrows show the direction of the strokes. As you write each letter, say its name aloud. Make additional copies of this sheet if you need more practice.

Upper-Case Phi: Draw a circle and then draw a vertical line through the middle. The vertical line should not go above the top line or below the base line, but it does go slightly above and below the circle.



Lower-Case Phi: There are two common ways to write the lower-case Phi. For the first way, begin at the star and write the letter in one continuous stroke without lifting your pen. For the second way, draw a circle and then draw a vertical line through the middle. Note that for both ways the vertical line goes below the base line.



Upper-Case Chi: Write it as you would an English upper-case X (but it sounds like the **ch** in **loch**).



Lower-Case Chi: Write it as you would an English lower-case x (but it sounds like the **ch** in **loch**). Note that the bottom of the Chi goes below the base line.



Upper-Case Psi: Draw a u shape and then draw a vertical line through the middle.



Lower-Case Psi: The lower-case Psi is a smaller version of the upper-case Psi. Note that the bottom of the vertical line goes below the base line.



Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Φφ, Χχ, and Ψψ.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 8.
- ☐ *3. Krazy Koine: The Greek letters in the left column are not real Greek words. But if you pronounce the letters correctly, they will sound exactly like an English word. Pronounce each Krazy Koine word and decide if the sound matches A or B. Circle the correct answer.

	A	B		A	B		A	B
κιψ	kiss	keeps	φλαψ	flaps	flops	λιψ	leaps	lips
τει	tea	tie	έντ	ant	end	πηυ	pew	pave
λευι	levee	Louie	παιπ	pep	pipe	ωφ	off	oaf

Krazy Koine Challenge: Pronounce these Krazy Koine words and write the English word they sound like. Hint: All are things that you drink.

παίψι: _____ κάφι: _____ σμύδι: _____

Krazy Koine Phrase Challenge: Pronounce these Krazy Koine words and write the English words they sound like to make a short phrase.

λαύα φλοζ σλώλει δε σνώφληκ φελλ τυ ελξ λειβ δε αρκ

- ☐ *4. Below are twelve of the vocabulary words that you learned in the last eight lessons. Place them in alphabetic order from Alpha to Omega by numbering them in order from 1 to 12.

_____	ἔχω	_____	ψυχή
_____	φῶς	_____	ἀλήθεια
_____	καί	_____	πέμπω
_____	γυνή	_____	θεά
_____	ζωή	_____	διδάσκαλος
_____	λαμβάνω	_____	σταυρός

- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 8 Knowledge Check A** on page 118 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 8 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 3 Greek letters you learned in Lesson 8.

See page 224 to check your answers.

Write the Name of the Letter	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Complete the “Sounds Like” Information
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____
		Sounds like the _____ in _____

Write the English gloss for the words below.

See page 227 to check your answers.

15. πέμπω _____
16. ὁ ἀνὴρ _____
17. ἡ παραβολή _____
18. ὁ διδάσκαλος _____
19. ὁ σταυρός _____
20. ἡ γυνή _____
21. τεσσεράκοντα _____
22. ἔχω _____
23. ἡ ὁδός _____
24. ἡ ψυχὴ _____
25. τὸ φῶς _____

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Try to write each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Watch video **8.0 Vocabulary Review**.
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the names, forms and sounds of Φφ, Χχ, and Ψψ.
- ☐ 4. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 8.
- ☐ 5. Write the gloss for each word in the blank space below the ruled area. Then practice writing each word by tracing over the grey outlines. Write two additional copies of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud.

ἔχω

ἡ ὁδός

ἡ ψυχὴ

τὸ φῶς

- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 8 Knowledge Check B** on page 120 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ 7. Read section **8.4 Something Extra - The Fish Symbol**.

Lesson 8 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 24 Greek letters you learned in Lessons 1 to 8.

See page 225 to check your answers.

[illegible]

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

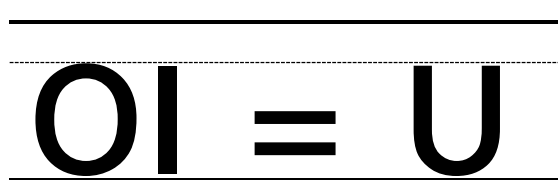
© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

9.1 Vowel Digraphs οἰ and οὐ

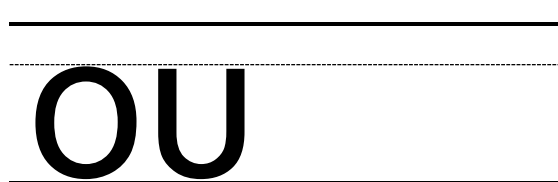
A digraph is a combination of two letters that represent one sound. In English, there are around fifty vowel digraphs such as the **ea** in **teach**, the **oo** in **moon**, and the **oe** in **doe**. Notice that these combinations of two vowels have only one vowel sound.

In Koine Greek there are only four vowel digraphs that you need to learn: **αι ει οἰ ου**

In Section 4.2 (page 54) you learned the sounds of **αι** and **ει**. In this lesson you will learn the sounds of **οἰ** and **ου**.

	Name:	omicron-iota
	Sound:	u in flu \ü\
	Type:	Vowel Digraph

οἰ sounds just like the letter Upsilon
like the **u** in **flu**

	Name:	omicron-upsilon
	Sound:	ou in soup \ü\
	Type:	Vowel Digraph

ου sounds like the **ou** in **soup**

The sounds of the digraphs **οἰ** and **ου** are similar. **οἰ** is pronounced with tightly rounded lips and the tongue touching the tops of the lower front teeth. The digraph **ου** is pronounced with less rounded lips and the tongue further back in the mouth lightly touching, or just behind, the lower front teeth.

Here is a summary of the four digraph sounds:

αι sounds like **ε**, like the **e** in **end**
ει sounds like **ι**, like the **i** in **ski**
οἰ sounds like **υ**, like the **u** in **flu**
ου sounds like the **ou** in **soup**

9.2 Punctuation Marks

Ancient and Koine Greek texts did not have punctuation marks. The text was written using only upper-case letters, with no spaces between words, and no punctuation, as the example below shows.



Reproduction on papyrus of Haggai 2:12 from the Septuagint.

Punctuation gradually became standardized in Greek and many other languages after the invention of the printing press in 1436. So, modern printed editions of ancient Greek texts have punctuation marks added to help the modern reader. The table below shows the four punctuation marks that are used in modern Greek texts of the New Testament.

Punctuation Mark	Purpose
α. Period	Full Stop
α, Comma	Minor Pause
α· Raised Dot	Major Pause (Equivalent to Colon or Semicolon)
α; Question Mark	Question

Notice that the question mark is represented by a mark that looks like an English semicolon. Also notice that there are no quotation marks. The reader must determine from the context if the Greek text is a direct discourse. The verse shown below from Mark 10:51 has all four punctuation marks.

καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς αὐτῷ ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν· τί σοι θέλεις ποιήσω;
ὁ δὲ τυφλὸς εἶπεν αὐτῷ· ραββουνί, ἵνα ἀναβλέψω.

⏮ Hear It ⏭

Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?"
The blind man said to him, "Rabbi, I want to see." Mark 10:51

Notice the absence of upper-case letters in the Greek text of Mark 10:51. Upper-case letters are used infrequently in modern printed editions of ancient Greek texts. Greek sentences do not begin with upper-case letters. They are only used for:

- The first letter of a proper name.
- The first letter of the word that begins a direct quotation.
- The first letter of the word that begins a new paragraph.
- The title of a book (every letter is upper-case).

9.3 Koine Greetings

Now that you are familiar with the alphabet, it is time to master that knowledge by learning to say more words and phrases and by learning more about how the language works. Let's start with some common greetings in this lesson.

9.3a Hello and Goodbye

🔊 Hear It

	<u>To One Person</u>	<u>To Several People</u>
Hello:	χαῖρε	χαίρετε
Goodbye:	ἔρρωσο	ἔρρωσθε

Notice that hello and goodbye have two forms:

- Use χαῖρε (hello) and ἔρρωσο (goodbye) when addressing one person.
- Use χαίρετε (hello) and ἔρρωσθε (goodbye) when addressing more than one person.

The singular greeting χαῖρε is used five times in the New Testament:

- Matthew 26:49 – Judas greets Jesus when he betrays Him.
- Matthew 27:29, Mark 15:18, John 19:3 – The Roman soldiers mockingly greet Jesus before his crucifixion.
- Luke 1:28 – The angel Gabriel greets Mary, the mother of Jesus.

*Gabriel came to Mary and said,
“Greetings [χαῖρε] favored woman!
The Lord is with you.” (Luke 1:28)*

The plural farewell ἔρρωσθε is used one time in the New Testament:

- Acts 15:29 – At the close of a letter from the council of Christian leaders in Jerusalem to new Gentile believers.

*If you keep yourselves from
these things, you will do well.
Farewell [ἔρρωσθε]. (Acts 15:29)*



χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;
Hello, what is your name?

ὄνομά μοι Ἄννα.
My name is Anna.

🔊 Hear It



9.3b What is your name?

One way to ask someone for their name is:

τί σοι ὄνομα;
What is your name?

τί means “what”.

σοι means “to you”.

ὄνομα means “name”.

; is the Greek question mark.

The verb “is” is not required.

You can also say “hello” when you ask:

χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;
Hello, what is your name?

You can also add the word “is”:

χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομά ἐστιν;
Hello, what is your name?

ἐστιν means “is” but is not necessary.

Notice that ὄνομά has two accent marks.

9.3c My name is...

When you give your name you can say:

ὄνομά μοι [your name]
My name is...

μοι means “to me”.

Or you can say:

[your name] ὄνομά μοι
...is my name.

If you don't know your name in Greek, use your English name.

There is one place in the New Testament where a name is asked for and given. It appears in the account where Jesus heals a demon possessed man. The account is recorded in Mark 5:9 and Luke 8:30.

And *Jesus* was asking him,
“What is your name?” [τί ὄνομά σοι]
He replied, “Legion is my name [Λεγιῶν ὄνομά μοι],
because we are many.” (Mark 5:9)

9.4 Vocabulary – Lesson 9
Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Έννέα

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
26. χαίρε / χαίρετε	hello/greetings	Interjection	5
27. ἔρρωσο / ἔρρωσθε	goodbye/farewell	Interjection	1
28. τί	what?	Interrogative Pronoun	80
29. τὸ ὄνομα	name	Noun	231
30. μοι	to me	Personal Pronoun	225
31. σοι	to you	Personal Pronoun	217
32. ὁ Ἰησοῦς	Jesus	Name	917
33. ἐστίν	he/she/it is	Verb	897

χαίρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;	Hello, what is your name?	Phrase	-
ὄνομά μοι [name]	My name is...	Phrase	-

Notes on the words:

26. χαίρε / χαίρετε – Use χαίρε when addressing one person. Use χαίρετε when addressing more than one person. These are imperative forms of the Greek verb χαίρω which means “I rejoice”.

Gabriel came to *Mary* and said, “Greetings favored woman! The Lord is with you.” (Luke 1:28)

27. ἔρρωσο / ἔρρωσθε – Use ἔρρωσο when addressing one person. Use ἔρρωσθε when addressing more than one person. These are imperative forms of the Greek verb ῥώννυμι which means “be strong”.

If you keep yourselves from these things you will do well. Farewell. (Acts 15:29)

28. τί – An interrogative pronoun. Depending on the context, τί can mean “what?” or “why”.

“Therefore, do not worry, saying, ‘What will we eat?’ or ‘What will we drink?’ or ‘What will we wear?’”. (Matthew 6:31)

29. τὸ ὄνομα – A neuter noun.

English Derivatives: Anonymous, pseudonym, synonym.

She will bear a son, and you will call His name Jesus, for He will save His people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21)

30. μοι – The Dative form of the personal pronoun ἐγώ (see **Vocabulary – Lesson 2**, page 27). The Dative form is often used as an indirect object in a sentence, meaning “to/for me”. You will learn about the Dative form in Lesson 12.

But whatever were gains for me, these things I now consider a loss for the sake of Christ. (Philippians 3:7)

31. σοι – The Dative form of the personal pronoun σύ. The Dative form is often used as an indirect object in a sentence, meaning “to/for you”. You will learn about the Dative form in Lesson 12.

I had many things to write to you, but I do not want to write to you with pen and ink. (3 John 1:13)

32. ὁ Ἰησοῦς – Jesus is the Greek form of the Hebrew name Joshua, which means “God is salvation.” In Hebrew, the name begins with the Hebrew letter *yod*, for which there is no letter equivalent in Greek. So, the Greek **Ιη** spelling at the beginning of the name was used to approximate the sound of the letter *yod*. You can pronounce the name as either *ee-ay-SOUS* or *yea-SOUS*.

Because Jesus is a proper name, it begins with an upper-case letter (see the bottom of page 122). Notice that the smooth breathing mark is placed before, rather than above, the upper-case Iota. Whenever a word begins with an upper-case vowel, the breathing mark and accent mark (if there is one) is placed before the vowel, because there is not enough room to print it above the vowel.

For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Jesus Christ. (John 1:17)

33. ἐστίν – The third person, singular form of the linking verb εἶμι (see **Vocabulary – Lesson 5**, page 68). If it is used without a stated subject, it can be translated as “he is”, or “she is”, or “it is”. You will know which way to translate it based on the context.

The one who does not love does not know God, because God is love. (1 John 4:8)

9.5 Something Extra – How Do We Know How Koine Greek Was Pronounced?

You have learned almost every sound in the Koine Greek alphabet. But are these sounds correct? In Lesson 1 you learned that the Greek language has been around for over 3500 years. Over time, it changed in the way it was written and spoken. So, how do scholars know how Greek was pronounced during the Koine Period (4th century B.C. to 4th Century A.D.)?

One of the primary ways scholars reconstruct pronunciation is by looking at spelling variations in ancient inscriptions and documents. For a fun, three minute video that explains this process, go to:

<https://www.koinegreek.com/pronunciation>

KoineGreek.com is a leader in researching, teaching and producing materials in Koine Greek.

The reconstructed pronunciation taught in this course focuses primarily on the pronunciation of the first three centuries A.D. – the period in which the New Testament and other important Christian documents were written. Even though the reconstruction is certainly not perfect, it will give you an appreciation for what the New Testament sounded like when it was read aloud in first century church gatherings, and what believers like the Apostle Paul sounded like when they taught and preached.

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Play video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Listen to but do not watch the video. As the instructor pronounces each letter, try to write the upper-case and lower-case forms on the **Alphabet Practice Worksheet** on page 128. Try your best. This exercise does not have to be perfect. Watch the video to check your answers.
- ☐ 2. Watch video **9.1 Vowel Digraphs oi and ou**.
- ☐ *3. Complete the Sounds Like information about digraphs. Count the digraphs in Acts 16:30-31 at the bottom of this page.

Digraph	Sounds Like	Count
αι	Sounds like the _____ in _____	
ει	Sounds like the _____ in _____	
οι	Sounds like the _____ in _____	
ου	Sounds like the _____ in _____	

(=11)

- ☐ 4. Watch video **9.2 Punctuation Marks**.
- ☐ *5. Identify the punctuation marks under the numbered boxes in Acts 16:30-31 at the bottom of this page. Write the corresponding numbers on the lines below.

Full Stop: _____ Minor Pause: _____ Major Pause: _____ Question: _____

- ☐ *6. Identify the accent and breathing marks under the lettered circles in Acts 16:30-31 at the bottom of this page. Write the letters in the boxes below.

Acute: Circumflex: Grave: Smooth: Rough:

- ☐ 7. Watch video **5.0 John 14:6** and practice reciting the verse.

 Hear It

(A) 1 (B) 2 (C) (D) 3 (E) (F)
 Κύριοι, τί με δεῖ ποιεῖν ἵνα σωθῶ; οἱ δὲ εἶπαν· Πίστευσον ἐπὶ τὸν
 Sirs, what I must do to be saved? And they said, believe on the
 (G) (H) (I) 4 (J) 5
 Κύριον Ἰησοῦν, καὶ σωθήσῃ σὺ καὶ ὁ οἶκός σου. (Acts 16:30-31)
 Lord Jesus, and you will be saved you and the household of you

Alphabet Practice Worksheet

	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	
(Alpha) ↓			(Nu) ↓
(Mu) ↗			(Omega)

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1. Read section 9.1 Vowel Digraphs oi and ou . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2. Read section 9.2 Punctuation Marks . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3. Watch video 9.3 Hello / Goodbye . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4. Watch video 9.3 What is Your Name? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. Read section 9.4 Vocabulary – Lesson 9 . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 6. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 9. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 7. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 9. Write the Greek word or phrase exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 8. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words and phrases for Lesson 9.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
If you need help with pronunciation, access the online vocabulary resources. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 9. Practice writing the words below by tracing over the grey outlines and then writing two additional copies of the word on the line. As you write the word, say it and its gloss aloud. |

ἔρρωσο

ἔρρωσθε

ὁ Ἰησοῦς

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 10. Copy each phrase in the blank area below it. Say the phrase aloud as you copy it. For the second phrase, write your name in Greek to complete the phrase. If you do not know your Greek name, write your name in English. |
|--------------------------|---|

a) χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;

 Hear It

b) ὄνομά μοι _____

 Hear It

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 2. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words and phrases for Lesson 9.
-
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words and phrases for Lesson 9.
-
- ☐ 4. Read section **9.3 Koine Greetings**.
-
- ☐ *5. Draw a line to match the sound made by the combination of letters in Column A with the sound made by the combination of letters in Column B.

A	B
βαι	βοι
ηβ	βι
βει	αυ
ευ	ηυ
αβ	εβ
βυ	βε

-
- ☐ 6. Practice saying the following phrase several times to your instructor, homeschool teacher, parent, or a friend: ὄνομά μοι [your name in Greek or English].
-
- ☐ 7. Practice saying John 14:6 several times. You know every word in it. Focus on accurate pronunciation rather than speed. If you need help with pronunciation, watch video **5.0 John 14:6** or listen to the **Hear It** audio. ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωή
-
- ☐ *8. Translate the following phrases which contain the word ἐστίν. Write your gloss below each phrase. Remember that ἐστίν can mean “he is”, or “she is”, or “it is” by itself. You will know which way to translate it based on the context of the phrase.

a) ὁ διδάσκαλός ἐστιν ἀνὴρ. ἔστιν ἀνὴρ.

 Hear It

b) ὁ διδάσκαλός ἐστιν γυνή. ἔστιν γυνή.

 Hear It

c) ὁ σταυρός ἐστιν ἔξω. ἔστιν ἔξω.

 Hear It

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Review the names, forms and sounds of the Greek alphabet letters.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words and phrases for Lesson 9.
- ☐ 3. The Greek words shown below are common words used frequently in the New Testament. You know the sounds of all the letters and digraphs used to spell these words. Listen to the **Hear It** audio and repeat each word aloud after the instructor pronounces it. You are not responsible to memorize these words.

Word	Meaning
βαπτίζω	I baptize
θεός	God, god
μαθητής	student, disciple
ποιέω	I do, I make
δόξα	glory
ἀκούω	I hear

Word	Meaning
πνεῦμα	spirit, wind, breath
ἀδελφός	brother
βασιλεία	kingdom
οἶδα	I know
οὐρανός	heaven, sky
πιστεύω	I believe

 Hear It

- ☐ 4. Complete **Lesson 9 Knowledge Check A** on page 132 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ *5. Translate the following conversation. Write your gloss below each line.

a) χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;

 Hear It

b) χαῖρε, ὄνομά μοι Ἄννα. τί σοι ὄνομα;

 Hear It

c) ὄνομά μοι Ἰησοῦς.

 Hear It

d) ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωή,

 Hear It

e) καὶ ἐγώ εἰμι διδάσκαλος καὶ τὸ φῶς σοι.

 Hear It

Lesson 9 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 24 letters of the Greek alphabet.

See page 225 to check your answers.

	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	
(Alpha) ↓			(Nu) ↓
(Mu) ↗			(Omega)

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.

Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words and phrases (**Hear It**, page 124) for Lesson 9.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words and phrases for Lesson 9.
- ☐ 3. The Greek words shown below are common words used frequently in the New Testament. You know the sounds of all the letters and digraphs used to spell these words. Listen to the **Hear It** audio and repeat each word aloud after the instructor pronounces it. You are not responsible to memorize these words.

Word	Meaning
ἐσθίω	I eat
ἰδοὺ	behold, look
θαυμάζω	I marvel
εὕρισκω	I find
ὄχλος	crowd
κοιλία	belly, womb

Word	Meaning
δοῦλος	slave
χάρις	grace
νῦν	now
ἐγείρω	I raise, rouse
προφήτης	prophet
φωνή	sound, voice

 Hear It

- ☐ 4. Copy each phrase in the blank area below it. Say the phrase aloud as you copy it. For the second phrase, write your name in Greek to complete the phrase. If you do not know your Greek name, write your name in English.

a) χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;

 Hear It

b) ὄνομά μοι _____

 Hear It

- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 9 Knowledge Check B** on page 134 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
- ☐ 6. Read section **9.5 Something Extra – How Do We Know How Koine Greek Was Pronounced?**

Lesson 9 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Write the English gloss for the words below.

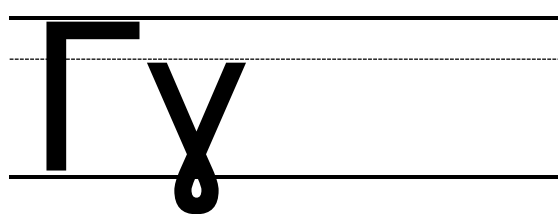
See page 227 to check your answers.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------|
| 18. ὁ διδάσκαλος | _____ |
| 19. ὁ σταυρός | _____ |
| 20. ἡ γυνή | _____ |
| 21. τεσσεράκοντα | _____ |
| 22. ἔχω | _____ |
| 23. ἡ ὁδός | _____ |
| 24. ἡ ψυχή | _____ |
| 25. τὸ φῶς | _____ |
| 26. χαῖρε / χαίρετε | _____ |
| 27. ἔρρωσο / ἔρρωσθε | _____ |
| 28. τί | _____ |
| 29. τὸ ὄνομα | _____ |
| 30. μοι | _____ |
| 31. σοι | _____ |
| 32. ὁ Ἰησοῦς | _____ |
| 33. ἐστίν | _____ |

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

10.1 Another Sound for Gamma (Γγ)



Name:	gamma (<i>GHAM-mah</i>)
Sound:	gh in ghost \gh\ guttural y in yet \y\ (in γε γι γει) ng in sing \ŋ\ (in γγ γκ γξ γχ)
Type:	Consonant

Gamma is the most complex letter in regard to pronunciation. It has three sounds that are common in words depending on the vowel or consonant that follows it. In Section 2.4 (page 26) and Section 5.2 (page 68) you learned two of the sounds - the guttural **gh** in **ghost** and the **y** in **yet**.

Gamma also sounds like the **ng** in **sing** when it is followed by the letters Gamma (γ), Kappa (κ), Xi (ξ), or Chi (χ). These four letters are called gutturals because they are produced in the throat. Since Gamma is a guttural, when any of these letters come after it there are two gutturals side by side. This is difficult to pronounce, so the Gamma is softened to the **ng** sound. You will learn several common words in this lesson where Gamma sounds like the **ng** in **sing**.

In Section 5.2 (page 68) you learned that a single Gamma sounds like the **y** in **yet** when it is followed by the vowels ε or ι, or the digraph ει. However, in a double Gamma (γγ) the second Gamma retains the guttural **gh** in **ghost** sound regardless of the vowel or digraph that follows it.

In the γκ combination, the Gamma is pronounced like the **ng** in **sing** and the Kappa like the **g** in **go**. It shifts its sound from the **k** in **skit** to the **g** in **go**. See Section 4.1 (page 53) to review the sounds of Kappa.

You will easily learn the various sounds for Gamma as you learn vocabulary words.

10.2 The Sound of υι

As you might expect, the sound of the vowel combination **υι** sounds like the primary sound of the letter Upsilon (**u** in **flu**) plus the sound of the letter Iota (**i** in **ski**). Why point out the obvious? Because many Biblical Greek textbooks teach a different pronunciation. But this is probably how it was pronounced in Koine Greek. This is the last sound you will learn for the Greek alphabet!

If the vowel combination **υι** has a breathing mark and/or accent mark in a word, the mark is always written over the second vowel Iota. It is treated like a unit just like a digraph (see Section 4.2 on page 54). For example:

υἱός
son

10.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 10

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Δέκα

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
34. γινώσκω	I know	Verb	222
35. ἐγγίζω	I draw near, approach	Verb	42
36. λέγω	I say, speak	Verb	2354
37. ὁ ἄγγελος	messenger, angel	Noun	175
38. ὁ υἱός	son	Noun	377
39. ἡ ἀγάπη	love	Noun	116
40. ἅγιος	holy	Adjective	233
41. ναί	yes	Particle	33
42. οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ	no, not	Particle	1606
43. οὐχί	no! (more emphatic)	Particle	54

Notes on the words:

34. γινώσκω – The Gamma sounds like the **y** in **yet**.
English Derivatives: Knowledge, agnostic, gnostic.

The one who does not love does not know God, because God is love. (1 John 4:8)

35. ἐγγίζω – The double Gamma sounds like the **ng** in **sing** plus the **gh** in **ghost**.

“Get up! Let’s go! The one who is betraying me is approaching.” (Mark 14:42)

36. λέγω – The Gamma sounds like the **gh** in **ghost**.
English Derivatives: Dialect, dialogue, legend.

But I say, walk by the Spirit and you will not fulfill the desire of the flesh. (Galatians 5:16)

37. ὁ ἄγγελος – The double Gamma sounds like the **ng** in **sing** plus the **gh** in **ghost**.
English Derivatives: Angel, evangelist.

Don’t neglect hospitality to strangers, for by this some have unknowingly entertained angels. (Hebrews 13:2)

38. ὁ υἱός – Note the ui vowel combination. See Section 10.2 on page 135.

You will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and you will name him Jesus. (Luke 1:31)

39. ἡ ἀγάπη – The Gamma sounds like the **gh** in **ghost**.

No one has greater love than this: to lay down one's life for one's friends. (John 15:13)

40. ἅγιος – The Gamma sounds like the **y** in **yet**.

This word is an adjective. An adjective describes a noun. For example, a man who obeys God might be described as a "holy man" or ἅγιος ἀνὴρ.

English Derivative: Hagiography (the biography of a saint).

"I baptized you with water. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit." (Mark 1:8)

41. ναί.

The commander of the cohort came and asked *Paul*, "Tell me, are you a Roman?"
He said, "Yes." (Acts 22:27)

42. οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ – In addition to meaning "no", this word can also negate a word, meaning "not". For example: οὐκ ἔχω, "I do not have". In Greek it is placed before the word it negates. The οὐκ form is used before a word that begins with smooth breathing mark. The οὐχ form is used before a word that begins with rough breathing mark. Elsewhere, the οὐ form is used.

The *Priests and Levites* asked *John the Baptist*, "What then? Are you Elijah?"
He said, "I am not."
"Are you the prophet?"
He answered, "No." (John 1:21)

43. οὐχί – An intensified or more emphatic form of οὐ.

On the eighth day when they came to circumcise the child, they were going to call him Zechariah, after the name of his father. His mother answered and said, "No way! Rather, he will be named John." (Luke 1:59-60)

10.4 How to Say "Yes" and "No"

By knowing the words for "yes" and "no" you can give a simple answer to questions.

ναί
yes

οὐ
no / not

οὐχί
no! / no way!
(more emphatic)

🔊 Hear It

10.5 Something Extra - Numbers

Typically, when someone learns a language, they want to know how to count. The table below shows all the numbers from one to ten, and then the numbers over ten that are used more than ten times in the New Testament.

In Section 3.1 (page 39) you learned about grammatical gender. The numbers one, three, and four have masculine, feminine and neuter forms. So, for example for the number one you would say εἷς ἀνὴρ (one man), μία γυνή (one woman), and ἓν ὄνομα (one name).

Number	Value	NT Frequency
εἷς (m) / μία (f) / ἓν (n)	One	345
δύο	Two	135
τρεις (m/f) / τρία (n)	Three	68
τέσσαρες (m/f) / τέσσαρα (n)	Four	41
πέντε	Five	38
ἕξ	Six	13
ἑπτὰ	Seven	88
ὀκτώ	Eight	8
ἐννέα	Nine	5
δέκα	Ten	25
δώδεκα	Twelve	75
εἴκοσι	Twenty	11
триάνκοντα	Thirty	11
τεσσεράκοντα	Forty	22
ἑκατόν	One Hundred	17
χίλιοι	One Thousand	11

 Hear It

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Play video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Listen to but do not watch the video. As the instructor pronounces each letter, try to write the upper-case and lower-case forms on the **Alphabet Practice Worksheet** on page 140. Watch the video to check your answers.
-
- ☐ 2. Watch video **10.1 Another Sound for Gamma (Γγ)**.
-
- ☐ *3. For each Greek letter combination below determine whether the beginning Gamma is pronounced like the **gh** in **ghost**, the **y** in **yet**, or the **ng** in **sing**. See the top of page 135 for help. Circle your choice.

γε -	gh	y	ng	γχ -	gh	y	ng
γη -	gh	y	ng	γα -	gh	y	ng
γγ -	gh	y	ng	γει -	gh	y	ng
γι -	gh	y	ng	γω -	gh	y	ng
γο -	gh	y	ng	γκ -	gh	y	ng
γξ -	gh	y	ng	γυ -	gh	y	ng

-
- ☐ *4. Review the Greek words below and determine whether the first Gamma is pronounced like the **gh** in **ghost**, the **y** in **yet**, or the **ng** in **sing**. See the top of page 135 for help. Write “gh”, “y”, or “ng” on the line to indicate your choice. You are not expected to memorize these words.

_____	λόγος	(word)	_____	ἐγγύς	(near)
_____	ἐπαγγελία	(promise)	_____	ἀναγινώσκω	(I read)
_____	αἰγιαλός	(shore)	_____	γράφω	(I write)
_____	μέγας	(large)	_____	γεννάω	(I beget)
_____	θιγγάνω	(I touch)	_____	ὀλίγος	(little)
_____	ἐγείρω	(I raise)	_____	σπόγγος	(sponge)

 Hear It

-
- ☐ 5. The Greek words shown in Exercise 4 are used in the New Testament. You know the sounds of all the letters and digraphs used to spell these words. Listen to the **Hear It** audio two times and repeat each word aloud after the instructor pronounces it.

Alphabet Practice Worksheet

	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	
(Alpha) ↓			(Nu) ↓
(Mu) ↗			(Omega)

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1. Read section 10.1 Another Sound for Gamma (Γγ) . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1. Read section 10.2 The Sound of υι . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2. Watch video 10.2 The Sound of υι . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 3. Read section 10.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 10 . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 10. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 10. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 6. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 10.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | *7. For each phrase below, listen to the Hear It audio and practice saying the phrase aloud.
Copy the phrase in the blank area below it and write the gloss below your copy |

a) χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;

 Hear It

b) ὁ ἅγιος ἀνὴρ

 Hear It


c) ἐγγίζω σοι καὶ λέγω χαῖρε

 Hear It


Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 1. Review section 10.1 Another Sound for Gamma (Γγ) . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 10. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 10. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 4. Read section 10.4 How to Say “Yes” and “No” . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. Watch video 10.4 How to Say “Yes” and “No” . |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | *6. Translate each pair of phrases below and write the gloss in the blank space below the phrases. The first one is done as an example |
-

 Hear It

a) πέμπω / οὐ πέμπω
I send / I do not send

 Hear It


b) ἔχω / οὐκ ἔχω

 Hear It

c) εἰμί / οὐκ εἰμί

 Hear It


d) ὤδε / οὐχ ὤδε

 Hear It


e) ἀλήθεια / οὐκ ἀλήθεια

 Hear It

f) γινώσκω / οὐ γινώσκω

 Hear It

g) λέγω ναί / λέγω οὐ

 Hear It

h) ἅγιος / οὐχ ἅγιος

-
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 7. Listen to the Hear It audio for the phrases in Exercise 6 and repeat each phrase aloud after the instructor pronounces it. |
|--------------------------|--|
-

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Review the names, forms and sounds of the Greek alphabet letters.
-
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 10.
-
- ☐ 3. Read section **10.5 Something Extra – Numbers**. Listen to the **Hear It** audios for Numbers (**Hear It**, page 138) and Count (**Hear It**, page 138) and repeat each word aloud after the instructor pronounces it. You are not responsible to memorize these words.
-
- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Copy the phrase in the blank area below it and write the gloss below your copy

a) ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωή

 Hear It

b) ἔχω ὄνομα

 Hear It

c) ἐγώ εἰμι ὁ ἅγιος ἄγγελος

 Hear It

-
- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 10 Knowledge Check A** on page 144 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 10 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Write the English gloss for the words below.

See page 227 to check your answers.

1. ἀββᾶ _____
2. ἄγω _____
3. ὦδε _____
4. ἐγώ _____
5. ἡ γῆ _____
6. ἡ ζωή _____
7. ἡ θεά _____
8. ἡ ἀδικία _____
9. ἡ ἀλήθεια _____
10. καί _____
11. εἰμί _____
12. γεμίζω _____
13. λαμβάνω _____
14. ἔξω _____
15. πέμπω _____
16. ὁ ἀνὴρ _____
17. ἡ παραβολή _____
18. ὁ διδάσκαλος _____
19. ὁ σταυρός _____
20. ἡ γυνή _____
21. τεσσεράκοντα _____

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 10.
-
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 10.
-
- ☐ *3. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud.
Copy the phrase in the blank area below it and write the gloss below your copy

a) ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ ἡ γυνή

 Hear It

b) οὐκ ἔχω φῶς

 Hear It

c) λέγω σοι, ἐγὼ εἰμι ὁ διδάσκαλος

 Hear It

-
- ☐ 4. Complete **Lesson 10 Knowledge Check B** on page 146 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 10 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Write the English gloss for the words below.

See pages 227 and 228 to check your answers.

- | | |
|------------------|-------|
| 22. ἔχω | _____ |
| 23. ἡ ὁδός | _____ |
| 24. ἡ ψυχή | _____ |
| 25. τὸ φῶς | _____ |
| 26. χαῖρε | _____ |
| 27. ἔρρωσο | _____ |
| 28. τί | _____ |
| 29. τὸ ὄνομα | _____ |
| 30. μοι | _____ |
| 31. σοι | _____ |
| 32. ὁ Ἰησοῦς | _____ |
| 33. ἐστίν | _____ |
| 34. γινώσκω | _____ |
| 35. ἐγγίζω | _____ |
| 36. λέγω | _____ |
| 37. ὁ ἄγγελος | _____ |
| 38. ὁ υἱός | _____ |
| 39. ἡ ἀγάπη | _____ |
| 40. ἅγιος | _____ |
| 41. ναί | _____ |
| 42. οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ | _____ |
| 43. οὐχί | _____ |

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

11.1 Greek is an Inflected Language

In language, an inflection¹ is a change made to the spelling of a word to show its function in a sentence. English uses some inflections, but the function of a word is primarily determined by word order. For example, “Titus chases a dog” is different in meaning than “A dog chases Titus.” From the word order, an English reader knows who is doing the chasing and who is being chased. English does use some inflections. For example, to show if a word is singular or plural – dog/dogs; or to show the tense of a verb – chase/chases/chased/chasing.



Greek, on the other hand, is a highly inflected language. Virtually every verb, noun, pronoun and adjective has multiple inflections to show its function in a sentence. Greek depends primarily on inflections, and not word order, to communicate meaning. Here is the illustration above written in two different, but acceptable sentences in Greek. Sentence (A) is in the same word order as English. Both mean the same thing: “Titus chases a dog.”

(A) Τίτος διώκει κύνα
Titus chases a dog

🔊 Hear It

(B) κύνα διώκει Τίτος

Notice that these two sentences have the same exact Greek words, but the order of the words is different. However, the meaning is the same. The spelling (i.e., the inflection) of each word indicates its function (subject, verb tense, or direct object) in the sentence. Word order is flexible in Greek because of inflections. The Greek reader knows that κύνα (dog) is the direct object (the one being chased) because of the way it is spelled - κύνα. If dog was the subject and doing the chasing it would be spelled κύων, as in sentence (C) below which means: “A dog chases Titus.”

(C) κύων διώκει Τίτον

Notice that the ending for the word “Titus” has also changed because it is now the direct object. Compare sentence (C) to sentence (B) and note the changes in the word endings: κύνα to κύων / Τίτος to Τίτον.

You will learn more about inflections in the next three lessons. Inflection is central to the Greek language, and you will spend a lot of time learning the inflection patterns when you take a beginning Greek course. The patterns for verbs are called **conjugations**². The patterns for nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are called **declensions**³. In this Koine Foundations class, you are simply being introduced to the concept of inflections.

¹Inflection comes from the Latin word *inflectere*, meaning “to bend”.

²Conjugation comes from the Latin word *coniugare*, meaning “to bind together”.

³Declension comes from the Latin word *declinatio*, meaning “bending away”.

11.2 Introduction to Greek Verbs and the Present Active Tense

Let's begin by reviewing some basic grammar. A sentence is a group of words that contains a subject and a verb. For example, "Titus chases" is a complete sentence because it has a subject ("Titus") and a verb ("chases").

A verb is a word that expresses an action (example: "I chase") or a state of being (example: "I am").

The subject of a sentence can be a noun (examples: "Titus", "man") or pronoun (example: "he").

The subject is categorized by person, which is a reference to either the speaker/writer (first person), the addressee (second person), or a third party (third person). The subject is also characterized by number, which indicates how many (singular or plural). The table below shows the organization of these categories. You should be familiar with these from English grammar.

	Singular	Plural
First Person (Speaker/Writer)	I	we
Second Person (Addressee)	you (sing.)	you (pl.)
Third Person (Third Party)	he, she, it + singular nouns	they + plural nouns

In English, we add a noun or pronoun before a verb to act as the subject to indicate who is doing the action (examples: "Titus chases", "he chases"). In Greek, pronouns are not needed for the subject because the person and number are expressed through the ending of the verb – through an inflection. All Greek verbs have a "built-in" subject, even though a separate noun or pronoun may be added to the sentence for the subject. For example, these are both complete Greek sentences because they have a subject and verb. Both mean the same thing: "I chase."

ἐγὼ διώκω διώκω

The pronoun "I" (ἐγὼ) is added to the sentence on the left – the subject is stated. The subject is implied in the sentence on the right – the subject is "built-in" to the verb. The ending inflection -ω means "I".

This table shows the ending inflections that are added to a verb stem to create verbs in the Present Active Tense. These are often called **personal endings**. The gloss is written below each personal ending.

	Singular	Plural
First Person (Speaker/Writer)	-Ω I	-ΟΜΕΝ we
Second Person (Addressee)	-ΕΙΣ you (sing.)	-ΕΤΕ you (pl.)
Third Person (Third Party)	-ΕΙ he/she/it	-ΟΥΣΙΝ they

Through these personal endings, Greek verbs communicate the person (first person, second person, or third person) and number (singular or plural) of the subject. These personal endings are simply added to the verb stem.

The verb stem is found by simply removing the final Omega (ω) from the dictionary form, which is the form you memorize for the vocabulary words for each lesson. Another name for the dictionary form is the lexical form.

This table shows the conjugation for the Present Active Tense for the verb διώκω. Present means it describes an action that occurs in the present. Active means that the subject performs the action.

Verb: διώκω (I chase)

Stem: διώκ-

Hear It

	Singular	Plural
First Person	διώκ <u>ω</u> I chase	διώκ <u>ομεν</u> we chase
Second Person	διώκ <u>εις</u> you (sing.) chase	διώκ <u>ετε</u> you (pl.) chase
Third Person	διώκ <u>ει</u> he/she/it chases	διώκ <u>ουσιν</u> they chase

To create any Present Active verb form, simply take the stem and add the appropriate personal ending.

Note that the Third Person Plural form -ουσιν ends in a Nu (ν). This Nu is called a Moveable Nu. It is a pronunciation aid similar to the “a” and “an” in English. The Nu is added when the verb is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or when the verb is the last word in a sentence.

Regarding the Third Person Singular, if there is no added noun or pronoun how do you know if the verb should be translated as “he”, “she”, or “it”? It will almost always be obvious from the context.

When you write out the pattern for a verb it is called **conjugating** a verb. To illustrate the information in this section, below are the conjugations of two verbs you learned in previous lessons.

Verb: λέγω (I say)

Stem: λέγ-

Hear It

	Singular	Plural
First Person	λέγ <u>ω</u> I say	λέγ <u>ομεν</u> we say
Second Person	λέγ <u>εις</u> you (sing.) say	λέγ <u>ετε</u> you (pl.) say
Third Person	λέγ <u>ει</u> he/she/it says	λέγ <u>ουσιν</u> they say

Verb: γινώσκω (I know)

Stem: γινώσκ-

Hear It

	Singular	Plural
First Person	γινώσκω I know	γινώσκομεν we know
Second Person	γινώσκεις you (sing.) know	γινώσκετε you (pl.) know
Third Person	γινώσκει he/she/it knows	γινώσκουσιν they know

The Greek verb system is extensive. In a beginning Greek course, you will spend about 75% of your time learning about verbs. However, what was explained above applies to the whole verb system. Verbs in all tenses are created by simply making changes to the stem for that tense.

11.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 11

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Ἔνδεκα

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
44. ἀναγινώσκω	I read, read aloud	Verb	32
45. γράφω	I write	Verb	191
46. τὸ βιβλίον	scroll, book	Noun	34
47. τὸ ποτήριον	cup	Noun	31
48. πῶς	how?	Adverb	103
49. καλῶς	well	Adverb	37
50. κακῶς	badly, ill	Adverb	16

Notes on the words:

44. ἀναγινώσκω – Sometimes has the meaning of “read aloud” as the verse below illustrates.

After this letter has been read among you, have it read in the church of the Laodiceans as well. You should also read the letter from Laodicea. (Colossians 4:16)

45. γράφω – The Gamma sounds like the **gh** in **ghost**.

English Derivatives: Words ending in -graphy, graph, graphic, graphite.

Jesus did many other signs in the presence of His disciples which are not written in this book. But these are written so that you might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and by believing you might have life in His name. (John 20:30-31)

46. τὸ βιβλίον – A neuter noun.
English Derivatives: Bible, bibliography.

Now there are also many other things that Jesus did. If they were all written down, I suppose the world itself could not contain the books that would be written. (John 21:25)

47. τὸ ποτήριον – A neuter noun.

For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until He comes. (1 Corinthians 11:26)

48. πῶς.

Then they asked him, "What did He do to you? How did He open your eyes?" (John 9:26)

49. καλῶς
English Derivative: Calligraphy.

Some of the scribes answered and said, "Teacher, you have spoken well." (Luke 20:39)

50. κακῶς
English Derivative: Cacophony (harsh or jarring sound).

That evening after sunset, people were bringing to Him all those who were ill or demon possessed. (Mark 1:32)

11.4 Something Extra – How are you?

In Section 9.3 (page 123) you learned how to greet and ask for a name. Here is a way to extend that conversation by asking, “How are you?”.

ΠΩΣ ἔΧΕΙΣ;

How are you?



καλῶς ἔχω

I am well.



κακῶς ἔχω

I am not well.

🔊 Hear It

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Watch video **11.1 Greek is an Inflected Language**.
- ☐ 3. Watch video **11.2 Introduction to Greek Verbs and the Present Active Tense**.
- ☐ *4. Write the gloss for each verb below. Pay attention to the personal endings so that you write the correct pronoun for the implied subject. See the bottom of page 148 for a table of the personal endings. The first one is done as an example.

λαμβάνει	he takes	γεμίζω	_____
ἄγουσιν	_____	ἐγγίζετε	_____
ἔχει	_____	ἄγεις	_____
γινώσκεις	_____	ἔχομεν	_____
γεμίζομεν	_____	λέγουσιν	_____
λαμβάνετε	_____	γινώσκω	_____
ἐγγίζεις	_____	λέγει	_____

- ☐ *5. Conjugate the verb πέμπω (I send) by writing the stem and the six forms. The accent mark remains over the first Epsilon in all six forms. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud. See section 11.2 for help.

Stem: _____

	Singular	Plural
First Person		
Second Person		
Third Person		

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Read section **11.1 Greek is an Inflected Language**.
-
- ☐ 2. Read section **11.2 Introduction to Greek Verbs and the Present Active Tense**.
-
- ☐ 3. Read section **11.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 11**.
-
- ☐ 4. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 11.
-
- ☐ 5. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 11. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article.
-
- ☐ 6. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 11.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
-
- ☐ *7. Conjugate the verb ἔχω (I have) by writing the stem and the six forms. The breathing mark and acute accent remain over the initial Epsilon in all six forms. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud. See section 11.2 for help.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
First Person		
Second Person		
Third Person		

 Hear It

-
- ☐ *8. For the phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Copy the phrase in the blank area below it and write the gloss below your copy.

γράφεις βιβλίον καὶ ἀναγινώσκω τὸ βιβλίον

 Hear It

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 11.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 11.
- ☐ 3. Watch video **11.2 Conjugation of λέγω**. Repeat each form after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ *4. Conjugate the verb ἐγγίζω (I draw near) by writing the stem and the six forms. The breathing mark and acute accent remain over the same vowels in all six forms. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud. See section 11.2 for help.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
First Person		
Second Person		
Third Person		

 Hear It

- ☐ *5. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Copy the phrase in the blank area below it and write the gloss below your copy.

a) πῶς πέμπεις τὸ βιβλίον;

 Hear It

b) ἡ γυνὴ γεμίζει τὸ ποτήριον καὶ
ὁ ἅγιος ἀνὴρ λαμβάνει τὸ ποτήριον

 Hear It

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 11.
- ☐ 2. Watch video **11.4 Something Extra – How are you?**
- ☐ 3. Review section **11.4 Something Extra – How are you?** Practice saying the phrases several times to your instructor, homeschool teacher, parent, or a friend.
- ☐ *4. Conjugate the verb ἀκούω (I hear) by writing the stem and the six forms. The breathing mark and accent mark remain over the same vowels in all six forms. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud. See section 11.2 for help.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
First Person		
Second Person		
Third Person		

 Hear It

- ☐ *5. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Copy the phrase in the blank area below it and write the gloss below your copy.

a) οὐ λέγετε μοι

 Hear It

b) λέγεις ἔρρωσο καὶ λέγω χαῖρε

 Hear It

- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 11 Knowledge Check A** on page 157 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 11 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 24 letters of the Greek alphabet.

See page 225 to check your answers.

	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	
(Alpha) ↓			(Nu) ↓
(Mu) ↗			(Omega)

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Watch video **11.2 Conjugation of γινώσκω**. Repeat each form after it is pronounced by the instructor.
-
- ☐ 2. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 11.
-
- ☐ 3. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 11.
-
- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Copy the phrase in the blank area below it and write the gloss below your copy.

a) ὁ Ἰησοῦς λέγει ἐγὼ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωὴ

 Hear It

b) πῶς ἔχεις;
καλῶς ἔχω
ἀναγινώσκεις βιβλίον;
ναί

 Hear It

-
- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 11 Knowledge Check B** on page 159 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 11 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Conjugate the verb διώκω (I chase) by writing the stem and the six forms. The accent mark remains over the first Omega in all six forms. Write the gloss beneath each form.

The personal endings are shown below for reference.

See page 149 to check your answers.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
First Person		
Second Person		
Third Person		

	Singular	Plural
First Person	-Ω	-ΟΜΕΝ
Second Person	-ΕΙΣ	-ΕΤΕ
Third Person	-ΕΙ	-ΟΥΣΙΝ

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

12.1 Introduction to Greek Nouns and Nouns of the Second Declension

From your study of English grammar, you know that a noun is a word that names a person, place, or thing. Nouns in Greek do exactly the same thing.

In Lesson 11 you learned that Greek depends primarily on inflections, and not word order, to communicate meaning in a sentence. This not only applies to Greek verbs, but also to Greek nouns. Various changes to the end of a Greek noun indicate its grammatical function in a sentence. The functions are divided into four¹ categories called **cases**.

Case Name	Basic Function	Example
Nominative	Identifies the Subject	an angel has a scroll
Accusative	Identifies the Direct Object	he sends an angel
Genitive	Indicates Possession or Provides Description	a scroll of an angel / angel's scroll legions of angels
Dative	Identifies the Indirect Object	he reads a scroll to an angel

Greek nouns are used just like English nouns. And, just as in English, Greek nouns have number (singular or plural) and gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter). Gender was covered in Section 3.1 (page 39).

In Lesson 11 you learned that the inflections or personal endings for verbs follow a pattern called a conjugation. Greek nouns do the same thing. The inflection pattern for a noun is called a **declension**². There are three patterns or declensions for Greek nouns. In this lesson you will learn about the Second Declension. The largest number of nouns in the New Testament follow this pattern. The Second Declension mostly contains nouns that are masculine or neuter. Here are the inflections called **case endings** that are added to the end of Greek nouns of the Second Declension:

	Masculine		Neuter	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ος	-οι	-ον	-α
Accusative	-ον	-ους	-ον	-α
Genitive	-ου	-ων	-ου	-ων
Dative	-ω	-οις	-ω	-οις

Note the following points about the case endings:

- There are similar case endings for masculine and neuter nouns. Differences are in bold above.
- The Neuter Nominative and Accusative singular are the same (-on) and the Neuter Nominative and Accusative plural are the same (-α).
- The Dative Singular (masculine and neuter) has an Iota Subscript.

¹There is a fifth case called the Vocative that is used for directly addressing someone. Nearly every form is identical to the Nominative form. It is not important for you to learn about it at this time.

²Declension comes from the Latin word *declinare*, meaning “to fall away”. The forms “fall away” from the Nominative case.

Just as with the verb, you apply these case endings to a stem. The stem is found by simply removing the -ος (for masculine nouns) or -ον (for neuter nouns) from the dictionary form, which is the form you memorize for the vocabulary words for each lesson.

	Dictionary Form	Stem
Masculine Noun	ἄγγελος	ἄγγελ-
Neuter Noun	βιβλίον	βιβλί-

When you write out the full pattern or declension for a noun it is called **declining** a noun. As an illustration of the information presented above, here are the declensions of the two nouns listed above.

Noun: ἄγγελος (angel)

Stem: ἄγγελ-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἄγγελος angel	ἄγγελοι angels
Accusative	ἄγγελον angel	ἄγγέλους angels
Genitive	ἀγγέλου of an angel	ἀγγέλων of angels
Dative	ἀγγέλῳ to/for an angel	ἀγγέλοις to/for angels



Hear It

Noun: βιβλίον (scroll, book)

Stem: βιβλί-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	βιβλίον scroll	βιβλία scrolls
Accusative	βιβλίον scroll	βιβλία scrolls
Genitive	βιβλίου of a scroll	βιβλίων of scrolls
Dative	βιβλίῳ to/for a scroll	βιβλίοις to/for scrolls



Hear It

Notice that the accent shifts position in the word ἄγγελος in some of its forms. Don't be concerned about this. You are not expected to know how Greek accents work. Remember that modern Greek texts mark the accents for you.

In this early stage of learning Greek, include the word "of" with the gloss for Genitive nouns (example: "of an angel"). Include the word "to" or "for" with the gloss for Dative nouns (example: "to an angel" or "for an angel").

The table on the next page adds Greek examples to the table on page 161. See notes on page 164.

Case Name	Basic Function	Example	Greek
Nominative	Identifies the Subject	an angel has a scroll	ἄγγελος ἔχει βιβλίον
Accusative	Identifies the Direct Object	he sends an angel	πέμπει ἄγγελον
Genitive	Indicates Possession or Provides Description	a scroll of an angel (angel's scroll) legions of angels	βιβλίον ἀγγέλου λεγεῶνες ἀγγέλων
Dative	Identifies the Indirect Object	he reads a scroll to an angel	ἀναγινώσκει βιβλίον ἀγγέλῳ

	Masculine		Neuter	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ΟΣ	-ΟΙ	-ΟΝ	-Α
Accusative	-ΟΝ	-ΟΥΣ	-ΟΝ	-Α
Genitive	-ΟΥ	-ΩΝ	-ΟΥ	-ΩΝ
Dative	-ῳ	-ΟΙΣ	-ῳ	-ΟΙΣ

Because of inflections, word order in a Greek sentence is flexible. The subject does not always come before the verb, and the direct object does not always come after the verb as they do in English sentences. It is common for the subject to come after the verb. A word in the Genitive case normally comes after the noun it describes.

A noun with a Nominative case ending will usually be the subject. For example, “angel” is the subject in the sentence, “an **angel** has a scroll” - ἄγγελος ἔχει βιβλίον. ἄγγελος has a Nominative case ending.

A noun with an Accusative case ending will often be the direct object – the noun that receives the direct action of the verb. For example, “angel” is the direct object in the sentence, “he sends an **angel**” - πέμπει ἄγγελον. ἄγγελον has an Accusative case ending.

A noun with a Genitive case ending will indicate possession or provide a description. For example, “angel” indicates possession in the phrase, “a scroll **of an angel**” - βιβλίον ἀγγέλου. ἀγγέλου has a Genitive case ending to indicate who the scroll belongs to.

A noun with a Genitive case ending can also provide a description. For example, “angel” describes what kind of legions are being written about in the phrase “legions **of angels**” - λεγεῶνες ἀγγέλων. What kind of legions are they? Angel legions. ἀγγέλων has a Genitive plural case ending to indicate description.

And finally, a noun with a Dative case ending will often be the indirect object – the noun that is indirectly affected by the action of the verb. For example, “angel” is the indirect object in the sentence, “he reads a scroll **to an angel**” - ἀναγινώσκει βιβλίον ἀγγέλῳ. ἀγγέλῳ has a Dative case ending.

12.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 12

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Δώδεκα

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
51. δέ	but, and, now	Conjunction	2792
52. ἀκούω	I hear, listen to	Verb	428
53. βλέπω	I look at, see	Verb	133
54. ὁ ἀδελφός	brother	Noun	343
55. ὁ θεός	God, god	Noun	1317
56. τὸ ἔργον	work, deed	Noun	169
57. τὸ τέκνον	child	Noun	99

Notes on the words:

51. δέ – A **postpositive** word, which means that it never comes first in a clause. Its usual position is second, but it may be placed third. However, when it is translated into English it is usually the first word in the gloss. This is simply the way this word is used in Greek.

In Greek, conjunctions are frequently used to join one sentence to another. καί and δέ are the two most frequently used conjunctions in the New Testament. καί is used 9161 times and is the second most frequently used word. δέ is used 2792 times and is the fifth most frequently used word. Together they appear a total of 11,953 times. The King James Version of the New Testament has 7957 verses. So just about any verse you read has one of these two words in it. Together they account for over 8% of the words in the Greek text!

52. ἀκούω – As with the English word “hear”, it can also mean “understand” or “comprehend”.
English Derivative: Acoustic.

And when King Herod heard this, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem along with him. (Matthew 2:3)
See also Matthew 11:4 below.

53. βλέπω.

Jesus replied and said to them, “Go. Report to John what you are hearing and seeing.” (Matthew 11:4)

54. ὁ ἀδελφός – A masculine noun.
English Derivative: Philadelphia (city of brotherly love).

As Jesus passed alongside the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and his brother Andrew in the sea casting nets, for they were fishermen. (Mark 1:16)

55. ὁ θεός – A masculine noun. A general word for god that is used to refer to the one true God and also to false or pagan gods.
English Derivatives: Words including theo-, theology, atheism.

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. (John 1:1)

56. τὸ ἔργον – A neuter noun.
English Derivatives: Erg, energy, ergonomic, synergy.

All Scripture is breathed out by God and profitable for teaching, for rebuking, for correcting, and for training in righteousness, so that the person of God can be thoroughly equipped for every good work. (2 Timothy 3:16-17)

57. τὸ τέκνον – A neuter noun.
English Derivative: Teknonymy (the practice in certain cultures of referring to parents by the names of their children).

Fathers, do not provoke you children to anger, but raise them with the discipline and instruction of the Lord. (Ephesians 6:4)

12.3 Something Extra – Lions and Tigers and Bears. Oh my!

Just for fun, here is a list of every animal mentioned in the New Testament based on Greek words

Dogs	
Dog	ὁ κύων
Little Dog, Puppy	τὸ κυνάριον
Birds, Fowl	
Winged Creature, Bird	τὸ πτηνός
Bird	τὸ ὄρνεον
Bird	τὸ πετεινόν
Small Bird, Sparrow	τὸ στρουθίον
Crow, Raven	ὁ κόραξ
Dove	ἡ περιστέρα
Eagle, Vulture	ὁ ἀετός
Hen	ὁ ὄρνις
Rooster	ὁ ἀλέκτωρ
Turtledove	ἡ τρυγών
Sheep, Goats	
Lamb	ὁ ἀμνός
Lamb	ὁ ἀρήν
Lamb	τὸ ἀρνίον
Sheep	τὸ πρόβατον
Kid, Goat	τὸ ἐρίφιον
Kid, Goat	ὁ ἔριφος
Male Goat	ὁ τράγος
Donkeys, Horses, Camels	
Colt of Horse or Donkey	ὁ πῶλος
Donkey	ὁ/ἡ ὄνος
Little Donkey, Donkey	τὸ ὄνάριον
Beast of Burden, Donkey	τὸ ὑποζύγιον
Horse	ὁ ἵππος
Camel	ὁ/ἡ κάμηλος

Cattle	
Domesticated Animal, Cattle	τὸ κτήνος
Calf, Bullock, Heifer	ὁ μόσχος
Heifer, Young Cow	ἡ δάμαλις
Ox or Bull	ὁ ταῦρος
Ox or Cow	ὁ βοῦς
Sow	ἡ ὕς
Swine, Pig	ὁ χοῖρος
Insects	
Worm	ὁ σκώληξ
Gnat	ὁ κώνωψ
Moth	ὁ σῆς
Grasshopper, Locust	ἡ ἀκρίς
Fish, Reptiles, Amphibians, Arachnids	
Creeping Animal, Reptile, Snake	τὸ ἔρπετόν
Fish	ὁ ἰχθύς
Small Fish	τὸ ἰχθύδιον
Small Fish	τὸ ὀψάριον
Huge Fish	τὸ κῆτος
Frog	ὁ βάτραχος
Scorpion	ὁ σκορπίος
Asp	ἡ ἀσπίς
Snake	ὁ ὄφης
Viper	ἡ ἔχιδνα
Wild Animals	
Wild Beast	τὸ θηρίον
Bear	ὁ/ἡ ἄρκος
Fox	ἡ ἀλώπηξ
Wolf	ὁ λύκος
Leopard	ἡ πάρδαλις
Lion	ὁ λέων
Dragon	ὁ δράκων



Sadly, there are no house cats mentioned in the New Testament. But for you cat lovers, here is the ancient and Koine Greek word for cat:

ὁ/ἡ αἴλουρος

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **12.1 Introduction to Greek Nouns and Nouns of the Second Declension**.
- ☐ 2. Decline the masculine noun ἄγγελος (angel) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. The case endings are shown below for reference. The breathing mark remains over the initial Alpha in all eight forms. For this exercise, do not add accent marks. Write the gloss beneath each form. See page 162 to check your answers. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem: _____

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

Second Declension Masculine Case Endings		
	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-Ος	-Οι
Accusative	-Ον	-Ους
Genitive	-ου	-ων
Dative	-ω	-οις

-
- ☐ 3. Watch video **12.1 Case Ending Examples**.
-
- ☐ *4. Write the gloss for each noun below based on the case ending. In the brackets beside the noun write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Circle S or P to indicate if the noun is singular or plural. See the example declensions on page 162 for help. The first one is done as an example.

Masculine Noun διδασκάλος

a) διδασκάλου	_____ of a teacher	[G]	Ⓢ P
b) διδάσκαλος	_____	[]	S P
c) διδασκάλους	_____	[]	S P
d) διδασκάλους	_____	[]	S P
e) διδάσκαλον	_____	[]	S P
f) διδάσκαλοι	_____	[]	S P
g) διδασκάλω	_____	[]	S P
h) διδασκάλων	_____	[]	S P

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Read section **12.1 Introduction to Greek Nouns and Nouns of the Second Declension**.
-
- ☐ 2. Read section **12.2 Vocabulary – Lesson 12**.
-
- ☐ 3. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 12.
-
- ☐ 4. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 12. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article.
-
- ☐ 5. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 12.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
-
- ☐ *6. Decline the masculine noun θεός (god) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. See pages 161 and 162 for the case endings and help. For this exercise, do not add accent marks. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

-
- ☐ *7. For the phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

καὶ ἀδελφὸς διδασκάλου γράφει βιβλία

 Hear It

[] [] []

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 12.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 12.
- ☐ *3. Decline the neuter noun τέκνον (child) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. See pages 161 and 162 for the case endings and help. The acute accent remains over the first Epsilon in all eight forms. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

a) ὁ διδάσκαλος ἀναγινώσκει βιβλίον τέκνοις. τέκνα ἀκούουσιν;

 Hear It

[] [] [] []

b) οὐκ δὲ ἔχουσιν ἅγια ἔργα καὶ οὐκ γινώσκουσιν θεόν

 Hear It

[] []

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 12.
- ☐ 2. Review section **12.3 Something Extra – Lions and Tigers and Bears. Oh my!**
- ☐ *3. Decline the masculine noun ἀδελφός (brother) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. See pages 161 and 162 for the case endings and help. The breathing mark remains over the initial Alpha in all eight forms. For this exercise, do not add accent marks. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.


Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

a) γεμίζεις ποτήριον καὶ τέκνον λαμβάνει ποτήριον ἀδελφῶ

 Hear It

[] [] [] []

b) Ἰησοῦς πέμπει ἀγγέλους ἀδελφοῖς

 Hear It

[] []

- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 12 Knowledge Check A** on page 172 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 12 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Conjugate the verb διώκω (I chase) by writing the stem and the six forms. The accent mark remains over the first Omega in all six forms. Write the gloss beneath each form.

The personal endings are shown below for reference.

See page 149 to check your answers.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
First Person		
Second Person		
Third Person		

	Singular	Plural
First Person	-Ω	-ΟΜΕΝ
Second Person	-ΕΙΣ	-ΕΤΕ
Third Person	-ΕΙ	-ΟΥΣΙΝ

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 12.
- ☐ 2. Review all the vocabulary words for Lessons 1 to 12.
- ☐ *3. Decline the neuter noun ἔργον (deed) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. See pages 161 and 162 for the case endings and help. The breathing mark and acute accent remain over the initial Epsilon in all eight forms. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

a) βλέπει θεόν - βλέπει θεός

 Hear It

[] []

b) ἀκούει ἀδελφὸς ἄγγελον - ἀκούει ἄγγελος ἀδελφόν

 Hear It

[] [] [] []

c) βιβλία τέκνων - βιβλία τέκνοις

 Hear It

[] [] [] []

- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 12 Knowledge Check B** on page 174 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 12 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Decline the masculine noun λίθος (stone) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. The case endings are shown below for reference. The acute accent remains over the same iota in all eight forms. Write the gloss beneath each form.

See page 218 to check your answers.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

Second Declension Masculine Case Endings		
	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ος	-οι
Accusative	-ον	-ους
Genitive	-ου	-ων
Dative	-ω	-οις

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

13.1 Nouns of the First Declension

In Lesson 12 you were introduced to nouns of the Second Declension. In this lesson you will learn about nouns of the First Declension.

A declension is a grouping of nouns that have the same pattern of case endings. The case endings indicate the grammatical function of a word in a sentence. Greek does not depend on word order like English. The functions are divided into four categories called cases.

Case Name	Basic Function
Nominative	Identifies the Subject
Accusative	Identifies the Direct Object
Genitive	Indicates Possession or Provides Description
Dative	Identifies the Indirect Object

In this lesson you will learn about the First Declension, which mostly contains nouns that are feminine. Other than having a slightly different set of case endings, First Declension nouns function exactly the same way as Second Declension nouns. Here are the case endings that are added to the end of Greek nouns of the First Declension¹:

	Feminine Alpha		Feminine Eta	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-α	-αι	-η	-αι
Accusative	-α	-ας	-η	-ας
Genitive	-ας	-ων	-ης	-ων
Dative	-α	-αις	-η	-αις

Note the following points about the case endings:

- There are two similar patterns. The only difference between the Feminine Alpha and Feminine Eta case endings occurs in the singular – α and η swap places. Plural case endings are identical.
- The difference between Alpha and Eta case endings is simply a spelling convention in Greek. Stems of feminine nouns ending in a vowel or Rho (ρ) follow the Alpha Noun pattern. You will know which set of endings to use from the dictionary form, which is the form you memorize for the vocabulary words. If the dictionary form ends in -α, use the Alpha endings. If it ends in -η, use the Eta endings.
- The Dative Singular always has an Iota Subscript.
- If you compare these endings to those of the First Declension Masculine on page 161, you will notice that they are similar – in most cases α/η swap places with ο/ου.
- The Genitive Plural of all First and Second Declension nouns is -ων.

¹These are the major patterns for the First Declension. There are three other patterns that have minor differences to what is shown above. You will learn them in a beginning Greek course.

As you have seen before, the case endings are applied to a stem. The stem is found by simply removing the -α or -η from the dictionary form, which is the form you memorize for the vocabulary words.

When you write out the full pattern or declension for a noun it is called **declining** a noun. As an illustration of the information above, here are the declensions for an Alpha Noun and an Eta Noun.

Noun: καρδία (heart)

Stem: καρδί-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	καρδία heart	καρδίαι hearts
Accusative	καρδίαν heart	καρδίας hearts
Genitive	καρδίας of a heart	καρδιῶν of hearts
Dative	καρδία to/for a heart	καρδίαις to/for hearts



🔊 Hear It

Noun: φωνή (sound)

Stem: φων-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	φωνή sound	φωναί sounds
Accusative	φωνήν sound	φωνάς sounds
Genitive	φωνῆς of a sound	φωνῶν of sounds
Dative	φωνῇ to/for a sound	φωναῖς to/for sounds



🔊 Hear It

Notice that the accent can change from acute to circumflex and also move to a different syllable. Don't be concerned about this. You are not expected to know how Greek accents work in this course. Remember that modern Greek texts mark the accents for you.

13.2 More About the Article (“the”)

You were first introduced to the Article in Section 3.2 (page 39). In English, the word “the” is called the **definite article**. In Greek it is simply called the **article**. Greek does not have an indefinite article corresponding to “a” or “an” in English. So far you have mostly seen the article in vocabulary lists to identify the grammatical gender of a word.

In sentences, the placement of the Greek article is similar to that of the English definite article. The Greek article comes before the word it describes (example: “the book”), but other modifiers may come between it and the word it describes (example: “the good book”).

τὸ βιβλίον τὸ ἀγαθὸν βιβλίον
the book the good book

In English there is only one form of the definite article, and it is used for nouns of all genders and for nouns that are singular and plural: the man, the men, the woman, the women, the rock, the rocks, etc. However, as you learned in Section 3.2 (page 39), the Greek article has separate masculine, feminine, and neuter forms and you have seen the Nominative forms **ὁ**, **ἡ**, and **τό**.

Since Greek is an inflected language, you will not be surprised to learn that the article is also inflected. Here are all of its forms:

	Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ὁ	οἱ	ἡ	αἱ	τό	τά
Accusative	τόν	τούς	τήν	τάς	τό	τά
Genitive	τοῦ	τῶν	τῆς	τῶν	τοῦ	τῶν
Dative	τῷ	τοῖς	τῇ	ταῖς	τῷ	τοῖς

Note the following points about these forms:

- In most cases, the article is simply the letter Tau (τ) attached to the masculine, feminine (Eta) or neuter case ending. The six exceptions to this are in bold above.
- The form of the article used with a word will always agree in gender, case and number with the word it describes. For example:

τοὺς ἀγγέλους τῆς φωνῆς τὰ βιβλία
the angels of the sound the books

Notice how the article and the word it describes have the same case endings.

You are not expected to memorize all these forms in this course. But you will see them in the exercises.

13.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 13

Λεξιλόγιο – Μάθημα Δεκατρία

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.
58. βάλλω	I throw	Verb	122
59. φέρω	I carry	Verb	66
60. φιλέω	I love	Verb	25
61. ἡ ἀδελφή	sister	Noun	26
62. ἡ καρδία	heart	Noun	156
63. ἡ φωνή	sound, voice	Noun	139
64. ἀγαθός -ή -όν	good	Adjective	102
65. κακός -ή -όν	bad, evil	Adjective	50

Notes on the words:

58. βάλλω.

English Derivative: Ballistic.

Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. (Matthew 7:19)

59. φέρω.

English Derivative: Christopher (Christ bearer).

But on the first day of the week, while it was still very early, *the women* came to the tomb carrying the spices they had prepared. (Luke 24:1)

60. φιλέω.

English Derivatives: Philosophy (love of wisdom), bibliophile (book lover).

Therefore, the Jews were saying, “See how much He loved *Lazarus*!” (John 11:36)

61. ἡ ἀδελφή – A feminine Eta noun.

English Derivative: Philadelphia (city of brotherly love).

But the son of Paul’s sister heard about the ambush, and when he came and entered the barracks, he reported it to Paul. (Acts 23:16)

62. ἡ καρδία – A feminine Alpha noun. Can refer to the physical organ in the body, the central or innermost part of something, or the emotional nature and understanding of a person.

English Derivative: Cardiac.

If you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved. (Romans 10:9)

63. ἡ φωνή – A feminine Eta noun.

English Derivatives: Phone, phonetics.

And a voice came from heaven, “You are My Beloved Son. In You I am well pleased.” (Mark 1:11)

64. ἀγαθός -ή -όν – An adjective. The three endings are for masculine, feminine, and neuter. When used with a feminine word it takes the Eta endings.

English Derivative: Agatha.

Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good. (Romans 12:21)

65. κακός -ή -όν – An adjective. The three endings are for masculine, feminine, and neuter. When used with a feminine word it takes the Eta endings.

English Derivative: Cacophony (harsh or jarring sound).

Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good. (Romans 12:21)

ἀγαθός and κακός are adjectives. Adjectives are inflected just like verbs and nouns. These two adjectives use the same case endings you learned for First and Second Declension nouns. When an adjective describes a noun, its case ending must agree with the noun in gender, case, and number. For example, “the good angels” would be:

τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς ἀγγέλους

All the words in this phrase, including the article, agree in gender (Masculine), case (Accusative), and number (Plural) – they all have the case ending -ους.

13.4 Something Extra – The Family

τὸ γένος

The poster on page 180 shows the Koine Greek words for the members of the family. Some of these words were vocabulary words in previous lessons. Here are some phrases you can try. μου means “my”.

[name] ἐστὶν ὁ πατήρ μου
[name] is my father

[name] ἐστὶν ἡ μήτηρ μου
[name] is my mother

[name] ἐστὶν ὁ υἱός μου
[name] is my son

[name] ἐστὶν ἡ θυγάτηρ μου
[name] is my daughter

[name] ἐστὶν ὁ ἀδελφός μου
[name] is my brother

[name] ἐστὶν ἡ ἀδελφή μου
[name] is my sister

 Hear It

Τὸ γένος the family

ὁ γονεὺς / οἱ γονεῖς
parent / parents

ὁ ἀνὴρ
man, husband

ὁ πατὴρ
father

ἡ γυνή
woman, wife

ἡ μήτηρ
mother



ὁ υἱός / οἱ υἱοί
son / sons

ὁ ἀδελφός / οἱ ἀδελφοί
brother / brothers

ἡ θυγάτηρ / αἱ θυγατέρες
daughter / daughters

ἡ ἀδελφή / αἱ ἀδελφαί
sister / sisters

τὸ τέκνον/ τὰ τέκνα
child / children

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **13.1 Nouns of the First Declension.**
- ☐ 2. Decline the feminine Alpha noun καρδιά (heart) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. The case endings are shown below for reference. For this exercise, do not add accent marks. Write the gloss beneath each form. See page 176 to check your answers. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

First Declension Feminine Alpha Case Endings		
	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-α	-αι
Accusative	-αυ	-ας
Genitive	-ας	-ων
Dative	-αι	-αις

☐ 3. Watch video **13.2 More About the Article**.

☐ *4. Write the gloss for each noun below based on the case ending. In the brackets beside the noun write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Circle S or P to indicate if the noun is singular or plural. See the example declensions on page 176 for help. The first one is done as an example.

Feminine Eta Noun ψυχή

a) ψυχῆς	_____ of a soul	[G]	Ⓢ P
b) ψυχῇ	_____	[]	S P
c) ψυχάς	_____	[]	S P
d) ψυχαῖς	_____	[]	S P
e) ψυχῇν	_____	[]	S P
f) ψυχαί	_____	[]	S P
g) ψυχῇ	_____	[]	S P
h) ψυχῶν	_____	[]	S P

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Read section **13.1 Nouns of the First Declension**.
-
- ☐ 2. Read section **13.2 More About the Article**.
-
- ☐ 3. Read section **13.3 Vocabulary – Lesson 13**.
-
- ☐ 4. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 13.
-
- ☐ 5. Create vocabulary cards for Lesson 13. Write the Greek word exactly as shown on the vocabulary list. Include accent marks, breathing marks, and the article.
-
- ☐ 6. Work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 13.
Use your Vocabulary Cards to help with memorization.
-
- ☐ *7. Decline the feminine Eta noun ζωή (life) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. See pages 175 and 176 for the case endings and help. The accent falls on the last vowel in each form. Nominative and Accusative forms have acute accents. Genitive and Dative forms have circumflex accents. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

-
- ☐ *8. For the phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

ἡ ἀδελφὴ τοῦ διδασκάλου γράφει βιβλίον

 Hear It

[]

[]

[]

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 13.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 13.
- ☐ *3. Decline the feminine Alpha noun ἡμέρα (day) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. See pages 175 and 176 for the case endings and help. The acute accent remains over the same Epsilon, except in the Genitive plural where it changes to a circumflex in the ending (-ῶν). Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

a) πῶς ἔχεις; κακῶς ἔχω. ἔχω κακὴν καρδίαν
[]

 Hear It

b) ὁ Ἰησοῦς δὲ ἀκούει τὴν φωνὴν τοῦ ἀγγέλου
[] []

 Hear It

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

- ☐ 1. Watch video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Repeat the name of each letter after it is pronounced by the instructor.
- ☐ 2. Continue to work on memorizing the vocabulary words for Lesson 13.
- ☐ 3. Read section **13.4 Something Extra – The Family**.
- ☐ *4. Conjugate the verb βάλλω (I throw) by writing the stem and the six forms. The acute accent remains over the Alpha in all six forms. Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud. See pages 148 to 150 for help and a table of the personal endings.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
First Person		
Second Person		
Third Person		

 Hear It

- ☐ *5. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

a) τὸ τέκνον φέρει τὰ βιβλία τῷ διδασκάλῳ

 Hear It

[] [] []

b) ἀναγινώσκετε τὸ ἅγιον βιβλίον καὶ γινώσκετε τὴν ἀλήθειαν τοῦ θεοῦ

 Hear It

[] [] []

- ☐ 6. Complete **Lesson 13 Knowledge Check A** on page 186 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 13 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 24 letters of the Greek alphabet.

See page 225 to check your answers.

	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	
(Alpha) ↓			(Nu) ↓
(Mu) ↗			(Omega)

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Listen to and practice the pronunciation of the vocabulary words for Lesson 13.
-
- ☐ 2. Review all the vocabulary words for Lessons 1 to 13.
-
- ☐ *3. Decline the feminine Alpha noun ἐκκλησία (church) by writing the stem and the eight case forms. See pages 175 and 176 for the case endings and help. The acute accent remains over the same Iota except in the Genitive plural where it changes to a circumflex in the ending (-ῶν). Write the gloss beneath each form. When done, listen to the **Hear It** audio and say each form aloud.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

-
- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

a) οὐ γεμίζομεν τὰ ποτήρια τοῖς τέκνοις

 Hear It

[] []

b) οὐ γεμίζομεν τὰ ποτήρια τῶν τέκνων

 Hear It

[] []

-
- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 10 Knowledge Check B** on page 188 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.

Lesson 13 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Decline the feminine Eta noun φωνή (sound). Write the stem and the eight case forms. The accent falls on the last vowel in each form. Nominative and Accusative forms have acute accents. Genitive and Dative forms have circumflex accents. Write the gloss beneath each form.

The case endings are shown below for reference.

See page 176 to check your answers.

Stem:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		
Genitive		
Dative		

 Hear It

First Declension Feminine Eta Case Endings		
	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ῆ	-αι
Accusative	-ῆν	-ας
Genitive	-ῆς	-ων
Dative	-ῇ	-αῖς

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

14.1 Dividing Words into Syllables

Knowing how to divide Greek words into syllables can help with pronunciation. Here are the basic rules:

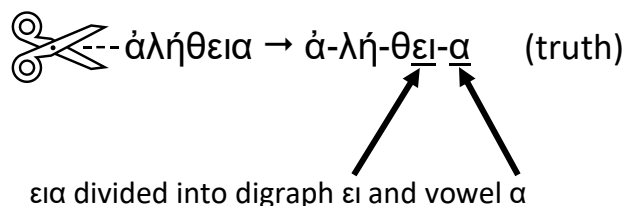
1. **A word has as many syllables as it has vowels, digraphs, or vowel combinations.** There is only one vowel, digraph, or vowel combination per syllable. A single vowel, digraph, or vowel combination can be a syllable by itself.

Vowels: α, ε, η, ι, ο, υ, ω

Digraphs: αι, ει, οι, ου

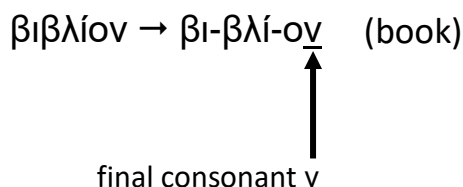
Vowel Combinations: αυ, ευ, ηυ, υι

2. **Beginning at the left end of the word, divide the word into syllables after each vowel, digraph, or vowel combination.** Two or more consecutive vowels are divided based on whether or not they are vowels, digraphs, or vowel combinations.

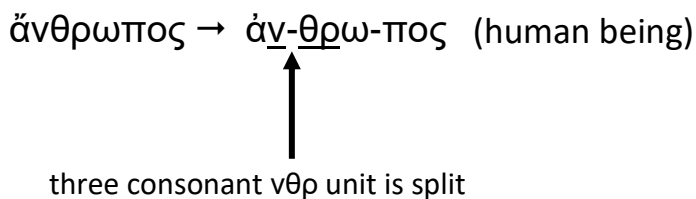


3. **Adjust the syllable divisions based on the following rules for consonants:**

- a. A final consonant(s) in the word goes with the previous vowel, digraph, or vowel combination.



- b. Where three consonants occur together (not beginning a word), split the consonants so that the first consonant in the group ends the previous syllable. The other two consonants begin the next syllable.



- c. Where only two consonants occur together (not beginning a word), split the consonants so that the first consonant in the group ends the previous syllable. The other consonant begins the next syllable.

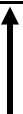
βάλλω → βάλ-λω (I throw)



two consonant unit λλ is split

- d. However, the following two-consonant units are not divided, but begin the next syllable: βλ, βρ, γν, γρ, δρ, θλ, θν, θρ, κλ, κρ, μν, πλ, πν, πρ, πτ, σκ, σμ, σπ, στ, σφ, σχ, τρ, φθ, φρ, χλ, χρ. These two-consonant units are just like consonant digraphs and blends in English: br, gr, st, etc.

βιβλίον → βι-βλί-ον (book)



two-consonant unit βλ is not split

4. In addition, compound words are divided where the words are joined together.

ἐκβάλλω → ἐκ-βάλ-λω (I throw out)



εκ is a preposition added to the front of the word βάλλω to form a compound word

In Section 5.4 (page 69), it was noted that the longest Greek word in the New Testament is:

προκεχειροτονημένοις

This word is easily divided into syllables. Based on Rule 2, begin at the left end of the word and divide the word into syllables after each vowel, digraph, or vowel combination:

προ-κε-χει-ρο-το-νη-μέ-νοι-ς

Then based on Rule 3a, adjust the division of the final consonant so that it goes with the previous digraph.

🔊 Hear It

προ-κε-χει-ρο-το-νη-μέ-νοις

That's it! Though it is a long word, it is easy to pronounce because Koine Greek is a phonetic language (see page 12). Just say each syllable based on the alphabet sounds you learned and put an acute accent on the next-to-last syllable.

14.2 Diacritical Marks

In Section 2.2 (page 24) you learned about accent marks. These marks are added to modern printed editions of ancient Greek texts to help the modern reader with pronunciation. There are three other marks that you should be aware of that show up occasionally. These additional **diacritical marks** also help with pronunciation but are not as common as accent marks. These marks are used to indicate elision, crasis, or diaeresis in Greek words.

Elision¹ is the omission of the final vowel in a word when it comes before another word beginning with a vowel. This was done to prevent two vowels coming together without an intervening consonant. This is commonly done with Greek prepositions. The vowel that is dropped is marked by an apostrophe. For example:

⦿ Hear It μετὰ ἀγγέλων is elided to become μετ' ἀγγέλων
(with angels)

In English, elision is very common when speaking, but seldom used in writing. For example, the phrase “just keep going” is often spoken as “jus’ keep goin’”. The final “t” in “just” and the final “g” in “going” are often elided when speaking.

Crasis² is the contraction of two words into a single word. An English example of this is the word “don’t”. The point of contraction is marked by an apostrophe just as in English. For example:

⦿ Hear It καὶ ἐγώ is often contracted to become καὶγώ
(and I)

Diaeresis³ is the occurrence of two vowels that are normally a digraph that are to be pronounced separately. The diaeresis symbol (¨) is placed over the second vowel. An English example of this is the word naïve. Diaeresis is not common in the New Testament and is typically found in proper names from the Old Testament. For example:

Hear It ai in the name Káiv (Cain)

The *ai* in the name *Káiv* is not a digraph, but two separately pronounced vowels as marked by the diaeresis. *Káiv* has two syllables, with the acute accent on the first syllable (*Ká-iv*).

On page 192 are summary tables of all accent, breathing, diacritical and punctuation marks for Greek.

¹Elision comes from the Latin word *elidere*, meaning “to strike out”.

²Crisis comes from the Greek word κρίσις, meaning “combination”.

³Diaeresis comes from the Greek word διαίρεσις, meaning “division”.

Accent Marks		What does it indicate?
acute	Acute	Stress the syllable and return to normal voice on the next syllable.
circumflex	Circumflex	Stress the syllable and return to normal voice on the same syllable.
grave	Grave	No stress if speaking at normal speed.

Breathing Marks		What does it indicate?
smooth	Smooth	No \h\ sound on initial vowel in Koine Greek. (No \h\ sound on initial vowel in Ancient Greek.)
rough	Rough	No \h\ sound on initial vowel in Koine Greek. (\h\ sound on initial vowel in Ancient Greek.)

Diacritical Marks		What does it indicate?
elision	Elision	Omission of a final vowel. (μετὰ → μετ')
crasis	Crasis	Contraction of two words. (καὶ ἐγώ → καὶ ἐγώ)
diaeresis	Diaeresis	Two vowels pronounced separately.

Punctuation Marks		What does it indicate?
period	Period	Full Stop.
comma	Comma	Minor Pause.
raised dot	Raised Dot	Major Pause (Equivalent to Colon or Semicolon).
question mark	Question Mark	Question.

14.3 Congratulations!

If you have faithfully worked through this course, you should know the alphabet and how to pronounce Koine Greek. You have built a foundation that will allow you to take a beginning Biblical Greek course where your focus can be on learning the grammar. You will not have to struggle with learning grammar and pronunciation at the same time.

Even though this course focused on the foundations, the material you covered was equivalent to the first four to five chapters in a typical college level textbook.

Hopefully, you will want to continue learning Greek. If so, continue to review the alphabet so that you do not lose what you have learned. Also, watch video **14.0 Grammars for Self-Study**, which suggests several grammars that you can use to continue your study of Koine Greek.

<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Review all the vocabulary words for Lessons 1 to 13.
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Read section 14.1 Dividing Words into Syllables .
<input type="checkbox"/>	*3. Divide the words below into syllables by drawing a vertical line between syllables.

καρδία

- ## Lesson 14

Lesson 14 Knowledge Check A

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Write the English gloss for the words below.

See page 228 to check your answers.


- | | |
|-------------------|-------|
| 44. ἀναγινώσκω | _____ |
| 45. γράφω | _____ |
| 46. τὸ βιβλίον | _____ |
| 47. τὸ ποτήριον | _____ |
| 48. πῶς | _____ |
| 49. καλῶς | _____ |
| 50. κακῶς | _____ |
| 51. δέ | _____ |
| 52. ἀκούω | _____ |
| 53. βλέπω | _____ |
| 54. ὁ ἀδελφός | _____ |
| 55. ὁ θεός | _____ |
| 56. τὸ ἔργον | _____ |
| 57. τὸ τέκνον | _____ |
| 58. βάλλω | _____ |
| 59. φέρω | _____ |
| 60. φιλέω | _____ |
| 61. ἡ ἀδελφή | _____ |
| 62. ἡ καρδία | _____ |
| 63. ἡ φωνή | _____ |
| 64. ἀγαθός -ή -όν | _____ |
| 65. κακός -ή -όν | _____ |

Name: _____

Check off each exercise that you complete. Hand in these sheets at the next class session.
Alphabet, vocabulary, and video resources are available at: <https://koinefoundations.com>

-
- ☐ 1. Play video **1.0 Alphabet Pronunciation**. Listen to but do not watch the video. As the instructor pronounces each letter, try to write the upper-case and lower-case forms on a sheet of paper. Watch the video again to check your answers.
-
- ☐ 2. Read section **14.2 Diacritical Marks**.
-
- ☐ 3. Read **Koine Greek Digraphs and Vowel Combinations** on page 230. The important thing to note from reading this is that nearly all Greek textbooks, grammars, and reference books will refer to the four digraphs and four vowel combinations as diphthongs. So, you should refer to them as diphthongs in any college course that you take. They are digraphs and vowel combinations in relation to Koine pronunciation.
-
- ☐ *4. For each phrase below, listen to the **Hear It** audio and practice saying the phrase aloud. Write the gloss for the phrase in the blank area below it. In the brackets below the nouns write N, A, G or D to indicate if the noun is Nominative, Accusative, Genitive or Dative. Also write S or P to indicate if it is Singular or Plural.

 Hear It a) γινώσκεις ὁ Ἑλληνικὸν Ἀλφάβητον; ναί / οὐ
[]

 Hear It b) ὁ διδάσκαλος λέγει ἔρρωσο
[]

-
- ☐ 5. Complete **Lesson 14 Knowledge Check B** on page 196 without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual. This is a closed book review to check your progress.
-
- ☐ 6. Read section **14.3 Congratulations!**
-
- ☐ 7. Watch video **14.0 Grammars for Self-Study**.

Lesson 14 Knowledge Check B

Complete this knowledge check without referring to notes, cards, or this student manual.

Complete the information below for the 24 letters of the Greek alphabet.

See page 225 to check your answers.

	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	Write the Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	
(Alpha) ↓			(Nu) ↓
(Mu) ↗			(Omega)

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Lesson 1 Answer Key

7.

Lesson 1 / Day 3

<input type="checkbox"/> cave	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> art	<input type="checkbox"/> ape
<input type="checkbox"/> apple	<input type="checkbox"/> snake	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ark
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> far	<input type="checkbox"/> cake	<input type="checkbox"/> ace
<input type="checkbox"/> apron	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> car	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> barn
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> hard	<input type="checkbox"/> snack	<input type="checkbox"/> dad

4.

Lesson 1 / Day 4

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> father	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> garb	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> star
<input type="checkbox"/> lake	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> farm	<input type="checkbox"/> add
<input type="checkbox"/> snap	<input type="checkbox"/> rabbit	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> swab
<input type="checkbox"/> hat	<input type="checkbox"/> sat	<input type="checkbox"/> flag
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> aha	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> park	<input type="checkbox"/> gas

7.

Lesson 1 / Day 4

not / note / gone / prop / obey / hope / word / to / for / open / copy / photo / fox / cope

Lesson 2 Answer Key

5.

Lesson 2 / Day 1

met / eve / ego / send / me / elf / we / emu / be / beg / edict / echo / she / lens

4.

Lesson 2 / Day 3

ἥλιος (sun):	<u>acute</u>	circumflex	grave	smooth	<u>rough</u>
ἀστήρ (star):	<u>acute</u>	circumflex	grave	<u>smooth</u>	rough
σελήνη (moon):	<u>acute</u>	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough
οὐρανοὶ (heavens):	acute	circumflex	<u>grave</u>	<u>smooth</u>	rough
γῆ (earth):	acute	<u>circumflex</u>	grave	smooth	rough
κόσμος (universe):	<u>acute</u>	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough

3.

Lesson 2 / Day 4

ἄββᾱ
ἄγω
ἐγώ
ᾧδε

ω	α	γ	ω	η	ι
δ	β	ο	ε	β	ω
α	β	κ	μ	γ	β
ω	α	υ	δ	ο	ω
κ	δ	μ	ω	ε	ν
λ	δ	ε	υ	γ	ω

5.

Lesson 2 / Day 4

ἐγὼ ἄγω = “I lead” or “I bring” or “I go”

Knowledge Check A

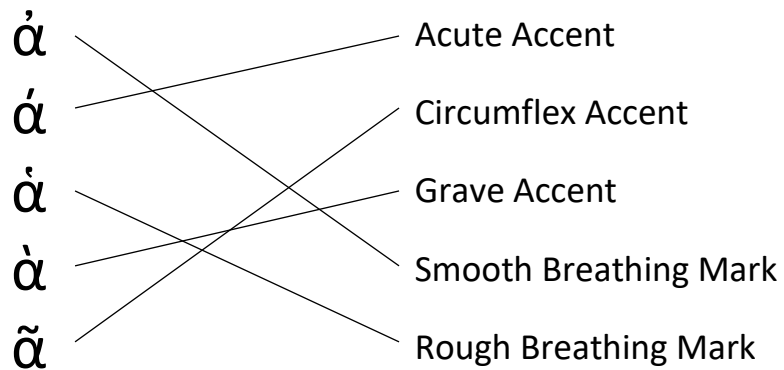
Lesson 2 / Day 4

- | | | | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. ἄββᾱ | _____ father _____ | acute | <u>circumflex</u> | grave | <u>smooth</u> | rough |
| 2. ἄγω | _____ I lead, bring, go _____ | <u>acute</u> | circumflex | grave | <u>smooth</u> | rough |
| 3. ᾧδε | _____ here _____ | acute | <u>circumflex</u> | grave | smooth | <u>rough</u> |
| 4. ἐγώ | _____ I (pronoun) _____ | <u>acute</u> | circumflex | grave | <u>smooth</u> | rough |

ã:	acute	<u>circumflex</u>	grave	smooth	rough
ǎ:	<u>acute</u>	circumflex	grave	<u>smooth</u>	rough
à:	acute	circumflex	<u>grave</u>	smooth	rough
á:	acute	circumflex	grave	<u>smooth</u>	rough
â:	acute	circumflex	grave	smooth	<u>rough</u>
ǣ:	<u>acute</u>	circumflex	grave	smooth	<u>rough</u>
á:	<u>acute</u>	circumflex	grave	smooth	rough

Knowledge Check B

Lesson 2 / Day 5



Lesson 3 Answer Key

4.

Lesson 3 / Day 1

bet / meet / obey / she / prey / shelf / elk / they / grey / belt / whey / be / tent / hey

pet / elm / be / kept / acme / he / cent / relay / led / maybe / prefix / deck / redo / edit

4.

Lesson 3 / Day 3

	A	B	C
δη	<u>they</u>	day	the
γη	go	yen	<u>gay</u>
ωθ	with	<u>oath</u>	oat
αζ	as	<u>oz</u>	at
γηβ	gab	yes	<u>gave</u>

3.

Lesson 3 / Day 4

	A	B	C
δω	dough	do	<u>though</u>
γω	yo	<u>go</u>	ow
βηγ	<u>vague</u>	bag	beg
γηζ	yes	<u>gaze</u>	gate
δωζ	toes	doze	<u>those</u>

Knowledge Check A

Lesson 3 / Day 4

5. ἡ γῆ earth, land, soil acute circumflex grave smooth rough

6. ἡ ζωή life acute circumflex grave smooth rough

7. ἡ θεά goddess acute circumflex grave smooth rough

<u>θ</u>	thin	<u>θ</u>	thaw	<u>θ</u>	wrath
<u>δ</u>	this	<u>θ</u>	thug	<u>δ</u>	they
<u>θ</u>	both	<u>δ</u>	then	<u>δ</u>	those
<u>θ</u>	math	<u>δ</u>	that	<u>θ</u>	bath
<u>δ</u>	thus	<u>δ</u>	them	<u>θ</u>	thank
<u>δ</u>	than	<u>θ</u>	myth	<u>δ</u>	thee

Knowledge Check B

Lesson 3 / Day 5

Grammatical gender is a way of classifying nouns into categories of masculine, feminine, or neuter.

The Greek word for “the” is called the article.

Lesson 4 Answer Key

4.

Lesson 4 / Day 1

sit / curious / taxi / hit / deli / inn / ivy / safari / media / icon / input / via / ivory / studio

5.

Lesson 4 / Day 3

	A	B	C		A	B	C
ελκ	ink	ilk	<u>elk</u>	κηβ	<u>cave</u>	cobb	keep
ζειλ	<u>zeal</u>	seal	veil	δι	die	<u>thee</u>	day
ιζι	ivy	<u>easy</u>	is	δειζ	this	dish	<u>these</u>
ειγλ	easel	<u>eagle</u>	ankle	κιζ	kiss	<u>keys</u>	kit

4.

Lesson 4 / Day 4

A	B	C
κεγ	eve	λιβ
ιβ	leave	ειζι
κειζ	keys	ειβ
λειβ	levy	λαιβει
ιζει	keg	κιζ
λεβι	easy	καιγ

Knowledge Check A

Lesson 4 / Day 4

8. ἡ ἀδικία

unrighteousness

9. ἡ ἀλήθεια

truth

10. καί

and, even, also

Lesson 5 Answer Key

5.

Lesson 5 / Day 3

<u>gh</u>	λέγω	(I say)	<u>gh</u>	ἀγαλλιάω	(I exult)
<u>y</u>	ἡγεμῶν	(governor)	<u>y</u>	γενεά	(family)
<u>y</u>	λεγιῶν	(legion)	<u>gh</u>	ἀγωγή	(way of life)
<u>gh</u>	γαμέω	(I marry)	<u>y</u>	γεννάω	(I beget)
<u>y</u>	μαγεία	(magic)	<u>gh</u>	καταλλαγή	(reconciliation)

3.

Lesson 5 / Day 4

	A	B	C		A	B	C
αξ	ax	<u>ox</u>	as	δεν	den	than	<u>then</u>
γελ	gel	<u>yell</u>	get	μηλ	mean	<u>male</u>	meal
μηξ	<u>makes</u>	maze	meek	μηζ	<u>maze</u>	max	makes
ελξ	elf	else	<u>elks</u>	ναικ	vex	vail	<u>neck</u>
μεθ	<u>meth</u>	met	math	θιβ	thee	<u>thieve</u>	fib
νηβει	navel	<u>navy</u>	novel	γεν	gave	<u>yen</u>	yon
ωξ	<u>oaks</u>	oaf	oz	μεν	<u>men</u>	mauve	main
μεμω	meow	mime	<u>memo</u>	μην	men	mauve	<u>main</u>

δ	γ	ά	έ	γ	ώ	β	ξ	ά	θ
κ	έ	ε	λ	ζ	ώ	ά	ν	δ	ε
θ	ξ	μ	μ	ή	ά	δ	κ	ι	ά
γ	ω	ά	γ	ί	θ	ί	ε	κ	λ
ñ	ζ	ω	ή	μ	ζ	ε	ν	ί	δ
λ	α	μ	β	ά	ν	ω	ι	α	ί
θ	ί	ã	β	μ	ά	ξ	ε	α	ε
α	ξ	κ	α	ί	β	έ	γ	θ	ί
λ	ά	γ	ω	η	β	δ	ζ	ώ	ν
γ	ά	λ	β	κ	ã	ε	ί	μ	ί

Lesson 6 Answer Key

5.

Lesson 6 / Day 3

<u>b</u>	ἀμπελών	(vineyard)	<u>p</u>	πίπτω	(I fall)
<u>b</u>	ἐμπαίζω	(I mock)	<u>b</u>	λάμπω	(I shine)
<u>p</u>	βλέπω	(I see)	<u>p</u>	πίνω	(I drink)
<u>b</u>	ἐμπλοκή	(braid)	<u>p</u>	ἐλπίζω	(I hope)
<u>p</u>	ἀγάπη	(love)	<u>b</u>	ἐμπνέω	(I breathe)

3.

Lesson 6 / Day 4

	A	B	C		A	B	C
μάμπο	mamba	campo	<u>mambo</u>	ρογ	Roy	<u>rogue</u>	pug
ποκ	pock	<u>poke</u>	book	οθ	<u>oath</u>	oat	odd
μο	<u>mow</u>	no	ma	ζον	love	dove	<u>zone</u>
ρηξ	pays	rex	<u>rakes</u>	δο	<u>though</u>	do	dough
ρομ	<u>roam</u>	pom	poo	πόνι	rove	move	<u>pony</u>
πηβ	babe	<u>pave</u>	pub	μον	moon	<u>moan</u>	move
δερ	dear	<u>there</u>	deep	κάμπο	campo	<u>combo</u>	compo
γελ	gel	get	<u>yell</u>	πιβ	<u>peeve</u>	bib	nib
ρήνει	<u>rainy</u>	penny	peavey	έξπέλ	easel	excel	<u>expel</u>

Krazy Koine Challenge:

Ρόμιο: Romeo

ζάμπι: zombie

ρεικάπι: recopy

Lesson 7 Answer Key

5.

Lesson 7 / Day 3

<u>d</u>	ἐντολή	(commandment)	<u>t</u>	θάνατος	(death)
<u>t</u>	πίστις	(faith)	<u>d</u>	πέντε	(five)
<u>t</u>	ἁμαρτία	(sin)	<u>d</u>	ἀντί	(instead of)
<u>d</u>	βροντή	(thunder)	<u>t</u>	ἄρτος	(bread)
<u>d</u>	βαλλάντιον	(money bag)	<u>d</u>	ἀντίδικος	(adversary)

3.

Lesson 7 / Day 4

	A	B		A	B		A	B
σyt	soot	<u>suit</u>	ρευ	<u>rev</u>	pew	μεντ	<u>mend</u>	meant
σεντ	<u>send</u>	sent	σαξ	<u>socks</u>	sack	ρεντ	<u>rend</u>	rent
κυπ	<u>coop</u>	cup	τρέντι	twenty	<u>trendy</u>	νυς	news	<u>noose</u>
λευι	<u>levy</u>	Louie	βεντ	bent	<u>vend</u>	κωτς	<u>coats</u>	cots
ρυθ	root	<u>Ruth</u>	πις	<u>peace</u>	peas	σηυ	sew	<u>save</u>

Krazy Koine Challenge:

ἐξτέντζ: extends

ἴβεν: even

σίκωστ: seacoast

4.

Lesson 7 / Day 4

<u>v</u>	ἄλευρον	(wheat flour)	<u>v</u>	θαυμάζω	(I marvel)
<u>v</u>	λευκός	(white)	<u>u</u>	συκῇ	(fig tree)
<u>u</u>	θυγάτηρ	(daughter)	<u>v</u>	ἐλευθερία	(freedom)
<u>u</u>	ξύλον	(wood, tree)	<u>u</u>	μυστήριον	(mystery)
<u>v</u>	Δαυίδ	(David)	<u>v</u>	καυματίζω	(I burn up)

Lesson 8 Answer Key

3.

Lesson 8 / Day 4

	A	B		A	B		A	B
κιψ	kiss	<u>keeps</u>	φλαψ	flaps	<u>flops</u>	λιψ	<u>leaps</u>	lips
τει	<u>tea</u>	tie	έντ	ant	<u>end</u>	πηυ	pew	<u>pave</u>
λευι	<u>levee</u>	Louie	παιπ	<u>pep</u>	pipe	ωφ	off	<u>oaf</u>

Krazy Koine Challenge:

παίψι: Pepsi

κάφι: coffee

σμούδι: smoothie

Krazy Koine Phrase Challenge:

λαύα φλοζ σλώλει
lava flows slowly

δε σνώφληκ φελλ
the snowflake fell

τυ ελξ λειβ δε αρκ
two elks leave the ark

4.

Lesson 8 / Day 4

<u>4</u>	ἔχω	<u>12</u>	ψυχή
<u>11</u>	φῶς	<u>1</u>	ἀλήθεια
<u>7</u>	καί	<u>9</u>	πέμπω
<u>2</u>	γυνή	<u>6</u>	θεά
<u>5</u>	ζωή	<u>3</u>	διδάσκαλος
<u>8</u>	λαμβάνω	<u>10</u>	σταυρός

Lesson 9 Answer Key

3.

Lesson 9 / Day 1

Digraph	Sounds Like	Count
αι	Sounds like the <u>e</u> in <u>end</u>	2
ει	Sounds like the <u>i</u> in <u>ski</u>	3
οι	Sounds like the <u>u</u> in <u>flu</u>	4
ου	Sounds like the <u>ou</u> in <u>soup</u>	2

(=11)

5.

Lesson 9 / Day 1

Full Stop: 5 Minor Pause: 1,4 Major Pause: 3 Question: 2

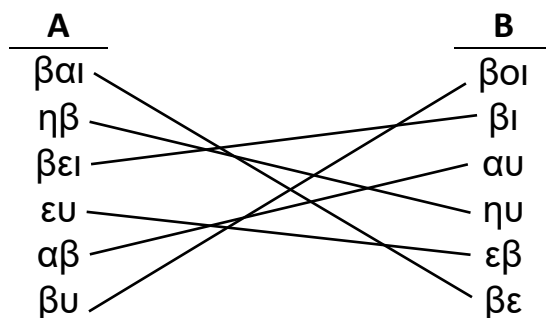
6.

Lesson 9 / Day 1

Acute: A G Circumflex: B I Grave: D F Smooth: E H Rough: C J

5.

Lesson 9 / Day 3



8.

Lesson 9 / Day 3

- a) ὁ διδάσκαλος ἐστὶν ἀνὴρ. ἔστιν ἀνὴρ.
The teacher is a man. He is a man.
- b) ἡ διδάσκαλος ἐστὶν γυνή. ἔστιν γυνή.
The teacher is a woman. She is a woman.
- c) ὁ σταυρός ἐστὶν ἔξω. ἔστιν ἔξω.
The cross is outside. It is outside.

- a) χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;
Hello, what is your name?
- b) χαῖρε, ὄνομά μοι Ἄννα. τί σοι ὄνομα;
Hello, my name is Anna. What is your name?
- c) ὄνομά μοι Ἰησοῦς.
My name is Jesus.
- d) ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωή,
I am the way the truth and the life.
- e) καὶ ἐγώ εἰμι διδάσκαλος καὶ τὸ φῶς σοι.
And I am a teacher and the light for you.

Lesson 10 Answer Key

3.

Lesson 10 / Day 1

γε -	gh	<u>y</u>	ng	ΥΧ -	gh	<u>y</u>	ng
γη -	<u>gh</u>	y	ng	γα -	<u>gh</u>	y	ng
ΥΥ -	gh	y	<u>ng</u>	Υει -	gh	<u>y</u>	ng
Υι -	gh	<u>y</u>	ng	Υω -	<u>gh</u>	y	ng
Υο -	<u>gh</u>	y	ng	Υκ -	gh	y	<u>ng</u>
Υξ -	gh	y	<u>ng</u>	Υυ -	<u>gh</u>	y	ng

4.

Lesson 10 / Day 1

<u>gh</u>	λόγος	(word)	<u>ng</u>	ἐγγύς	(near)
<u>ng</u>	ἐπαγγελία	(promise)	<u>y</u>	ἀναγινώσκω	(I read)
<u>y</u>	αἰγιαλός	(shore)	<u>gh</u>	γράφω	(I write)
<u>gh</u>	μέγας	(large)	<u>y</u>	γεννάω	(I beget)
<u>ng</u>	θιγγάνω	(I touch)	<u>gh</u>	ὀλίγος	(little)
<u>y</u>	ἐγείρω	(I raise)	<u>ng</u>	σπόγγος	(sponge)

7.

Lesson 10 / Day 2

- a) χαῖρε, τί σοι ὄνομα;
Hello, what is your name?
- b) ὁ ἅγιος ἀνὴρ
the holy man
- c) ἐγγίζω σοι καὶ λέγω χαῖρε
I approach you and I say, "Hello".

6.

Lesson 10 / Day 3

- a) πέμπω / οὐ πέμπω
I send / I do not send
- b) ἔχω / οὐκ ἔχω
I have / I do not have
- c) εἰμί / οὐκ εἰμί
I am / I am not
- d) ὧδε / οὐχ ὧδε
here / not here
- e) ἀλήθεια / οὐκ ἀλήθεια
truth / not truth

- f) γινώσκω / οὐ γινώσκω
I know / I do not know
- g) λέγω ναί / λέγω οὐ
I say "yes" / I say "no"
- h) ἅγιος / οὐχ ἅγιος
holy / not holy

4.

Lesson 10 / Day 4

- a) ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωὴ
I am the way the truth and the life.
- b) ἔχω ὄνομα
I have a name.
- c) ἐγώ εἰμι ὁ ἅγιος ἄγγελος
I am the holy angel.

3.

Lesson 10 / Day 5

- a) ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ ἡ γυνή
the man and the woman
- b) οὐκ ἔχω φῶς
I do not have a light.
- c) λέγω σοι, ἐγώ εἰμι ὁ διδάσκαλος
I say to you, "I am the teacher."

Lesson 11 Answer Key

4.

Lesson 11 / Day 1

λαμβάνει	he takes	γεμίζω	I fill
ἄγουσιν	they lead	ἐγγίζετε	you (pl.) draw near
ἔχει	he/she/it has	ἄγεις	you (sing.) lead
γινώσκεις	you (sing.) know	ἔχομεν	we have
γεμίζομεν	we fill	λέγουσιν	they say
λαμβάνετε	you (pl.) take	γινώσκω	I know
ἐγγίζεις	you (sing.) draw near	λέγει	he/she/it says

5.

Lesson 11 / Day 1

Stem: πέμπτ-

	Singular	Plural
First Person	πέμπω I send	πέμπομεν we send
Second Person	πέμπεις you (sing.) send	πέμπετε you (pl.) send
Third Person	πέμπει he/she/it sends	πέμπουσιν they send

7.

Lesson 11 / Day 2

Stem: ἔχ-

	Singular	Plural
First Person	ἔχω I have	ἔχομεν we have
Second Person	ἔχεις you (sing.) have	ἔχετε you (pl.) have
Third Person	ἔχει he/she/it has	ἔχουσιν they have

8.

Lesson 11 / Day 2

γράφεις βιβλίον καὶ ἀναγινώσκω τὸ βιβλίον
You write a book and I read the book.

4.

Lesson 11 / Day 3

Stem: ἐγγίζ-

	Singular	Plural
First Person	ἐγγίζω I draw near	ἐγγίζομεω we draw near
Second Person	ἐγγίζεις you (sing.) draw near	ἐγγίζετε you (pl.) draw near
Third Person	ἐγγίζει he/she/it draws near	ἐγγίζουσιν they draw near

5.

Lesson 11 / Day 3

a) πῶς πέμπεις τὸ βιβλίον;
How are you sending the book?

b) ἡ γυνὴ γεμίζει τὸ ποτήριον καὶ
ὁ ἅγιος ἀνὴρ λαμβάνει τὸ ποτήριον
The woman fills the cup and the holy man takes/receives the cup.

4.

Lesson 11 / Day 4

Stem: ἀκού-

	Singular	Plural
First Person	ἀκούω I hear	ἀκούομεω we hear
Second Person	ἀκούεις you (sing.) hear	ἀκούετε you (pl.) hear
Third Person	ἀκούει he/she/it hears	ἀκούουσιν they hear

5.

Lesson 11 / Day 4

a) οὐ λέγετε μοι
You do not speak to me. / You are not speaking to me.

b) λέγεις ἔρρωσο καὶ λέγω χαῖρε
You say goodbye and I say hello.

- a) ὁ Ἰησοῦς λέγει ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωὴ
Jesus says, "I am the way and the truth and the life."

Note: It is common in Koine Greek to place the word "the" in front of a person's name. It is not translated into English.

- b) πῶς ἔχεις;
καλῶς ἔχω
ἀναγινώσκεις βιβλίον;
ναί.

How are you?

I am well.

Are you reading a book?

Yes.

Lesson 12 Answer Key

4.

Lesson 12 / Day 1

Masculine Noun διδασκάλος

a) διδασκάλου	of a teacher	[G]	<u>S</u> P
b) διδάσκαλος	teacher	[N]	<u>S</u> P
c) διδασκάλους	teachers	[A]	S <u>P</u>
d) διδασκάλοις	to/for teachers	[D]	S <u>P</u>
e) διδάσκαλον	teacher	[A]	<u>S</u> P
f) διδάσκαλοι	teachers	[N]	S <u>P</u>
g) διδασκάλῳ	to/for a teacher	[D]	<u>S</u> P
h) διδασκάλων	of teachers	[G]	S <u>P</u>

6.

Lesson 12 / Day 2

Stem: θε-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	θεός god	θεοί gods
Accusative	θεόν god	θεούς gods
Genitive	θεοῦ of god	θεῶν of gods
Dative	θεῷ to/for god	θεοῖς to/for gods

7.

Lesson 12 / Day 2

καὶ ἀδελφὸς διδασκάλου γράφει βιβλία

[NS] [GS] [AP]

and a brother of a teacher writes books

Stem: ΤΕΚΝ-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ΤΕΚΝΟΝ child	ΤΕΚΝΑ children
Accusative	ΤΕΚΝΟΝ child	ΤΕΚΝΑ children
Genitive	ΤΕΚΝΟΥ of a child	ΤΕΚΝΩΝ of children
Dative	ΤΕΚΝΩ to/for a child	ΤΕΚΝΟΙΣ to/for children

- a) ὁ διδάσκαλος ἀναγινώσκει βιβλίον τέκνοις. τέκνα ἀκούουσιν;
 [NS] [AS] [DP] [NP]
 The teacher reads a book to children. Are children listening?

- b) οὐκ δὲ ἔχουσιν ἅγια ἔργα καὶ οὐκ γινώσκουσιν θεόν
 [AP] [AS]
 But they do not have holy deeds and they do not know God.

Stem: ἀδελφ-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἀδελφός brother	ἀδελφοί brothers
Accusative	ἀδελφόν brother	ἀδελφούς brothers
Genitive	ἀδελφοῦ of a brother	ἀδελφῶν of brothers
Dative	ἀδελφῷ to/for a brother	ἀδελφοῖς to/for brothers

a) γεμίζεις ποτήριον καὶ τέκνον λαμβάνει ποτήριον ἀδελφῷ

[AS] [NS] [AS] [DS]

You fill a cup and a child takes a cup to a brother.

b) Ἰησοῦς πέμπει ἀγγέλους ἀδελφοῖς

[AP] [DP]

Jesus sends angels to brothers.

Stem: ἔργ-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἔργον deed	ἔργα deeds
Accusative	ἔργον deed	ἔργα deeds
Genitive	ἔργου of a deed	ἔργων of deeds
Dative	ἐργῷ to/for a deed	ἐργοῖς to/for deeds

a) βλέπει θεόν - βλέπει θεός

[AS] [NS]

he sees God – God sees

b) ἀκούει ἀδελφὸς ἄγγελον - ἀκούει ἄγγελος ἀδελφόν

[NS] [AS] [NS] [AS]

a brother hears an angel – an angel hears a brother

c) βιβλία τέκνων - βιβλία τέκνοις

[N/AP] [GP] [N/AP] [DP]

books of children – books for children

Stem: λίθ-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	λίθος stone	λίθοι stones
Accusative	λίθον stone	λίθους stones
Genitive	λίθου of a stone	λίθων of stones
Dative	λίθῳ to/for a stone	λίθοις to/for stones

Lesson 13 Answer Key

4.

Lesson 13 / Day 1

Feminine Eta Noun ψυχή

a) ψυχῆς	_____ of a soul	[G]	<u>S</u> P
b) ψυχή	_____ soul	[N]	<u>S</u> P
c) ψυχάς	_____ souls	[A]	S <u>P</u>
d) ψυχαῖς	_____ to/for souls	[D]	S <u>P</u>
e) ψυχήν	_____ soul	[A]	<u>S</u> P
f) ψυχαί	_____ souls	[N]	S <u>P</u>
g) ψυχῇ	_____ to/for a soul	[D]	<u>S</u> P
h) ψυχῶν	_____ of souls	[G]	S <u>P</u>

7.

Lesson 13 / Day 2

Stem: ζω-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ζωή life	ζωαί lives
Accusative	ζωήν life	ζώας lives
Genitive	ζωῆς of a life	ζωῶν of lives
Dative	ζωῇ to/for a life	ζωαῖς to/for lives

8.

Lesson 13 / Day 2

ἡ ἀδελφὴ τοῦ διδασκάλου γράφει βιβλίον
 [NS] [GS] [AS]
 the sister of the teacher writes a book

Stem: ἡμέρ-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἡμέρα day	ἡμέραι days
Accusative	ἡμέραν day	ἡμέρας days
Genitive	ἡμέρας of a day	ἡμερῶν of days
Dative	ἡμέρᾳ to/for a day	ἡμέραις to/for days

a) πῶς ἔχεις; κακῶς ἔχω. ἔχω κακὴν καρδίαν
[AS]

How are you? I am not well. I have a bad heart.

b) ὁ Ἰησοῦς δὲ ἀκούει τὴν φωνὴν τοῦ ἀγγέλου
[AS] [GS]

But Jesus hears the voice of the angel (the angel's voice).

Note: It is common in Koine Greek to place the word "the" in front of a person's name. It is not translated into English.

Stem: βάλλ-

	Singular	Plural
First Person	βάλλω I throw	βάλλομεν we throw
Second Person	βάλλεις you (sing.) throw	βάλλετε you (pl.) throw
Third Person	βάλλει he/she/it throws	βάλλουσιν they throw

a) τὸ τέκνον φέρει τὰ βιβλία τῷ διδασκάλῳ

[NS]

[AP]

[DS]

The child carries the books for the teacher.

b) ἀναγινώσκετε τὸ ἅγιον βιβλίον καὶ γινώσκετε τὴν ἀλήθειαν τοῦ θεοῦ

[AS]

[AS]

[GS]

You read the holy book and you know the truth of God (God's truth).

Stem: ἐκκλησί-

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἐκκλησία church	ἐκκλησίαι churches
Accusative	ἐκκλησίαν church	ἐκκλησίας churches
Genitive	ἐκκλησίας of a church	ἐκκλησιῶν of churches
Dative	ἐκκλησίᾳ to/for a church	ἐκκλησίαις to/for churches

a) οὐ γεμίζομεν τὰ ποτήρια τοῖς τέκνοις

[AP]

[DP]

We do not fill the cups for the children.

b) οὐ γεμίζομεν τὰ ποτήρια τῶν τέκνων

[AP]

[GP]

We do not fill the cups of the children (children's cups).

3.

Lesson 14 / Day 1

ἀ δι κί α	ὄ νο μα
ἀ λή θει α	γι νώ σκω
γε μί ζω	ἄγ γε λος
λαμ βά νω	βι βλί ον
πέμ πω	πο τή ρι ον
πα ρα βο λή	ἀ κού ω
δι δά σκα λος	ἀ δελ φή
τεσ σε ρά κον τα	καρ δί α

4.

Lesson 14 / Day 1

a) ὁ ἀδελφὸς οὐκ ἔχει καρδίαν ἀγάπης
[NS] [AS] [GS]

The brother does not have a heart of love (loving heart).

b) τὰ τέκνα ἀκούουσιν τὰς φωνὰς τῶν ἀγγέλων
[NP] [AP] [GP]

The children hear the voices of the angels (the angels' voices).

4.

Lesson 14 / Day 2

a) γινώσκεις ὁ Ἑλληνικὸν Ἀλφάβητον; ναί / οὐ
[AS]

Do you know the Greek Alphabet? Yes / No

b) ὁ διδάσκαλος λέγει ἔρρωσο
[NS]

The teacher says, "Goodbye."

Letters and Sounds

Name of the Letter	Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms	"Sounds Like" Information
Alpha	Aα	Sounds like the <u>a</u> in <u>spa</u>
Beta	Bβ	Sounds like the <u>y</u> in <u>vet</u>
Gamma	Γγ	Sounds like the <u>gh</u> in <u>ghost</u> Sounds like the <u>y</u> in <u>yet</u> Sounds like the <u>ng</u> in <u>sing</u>
Delta	Δδ	Sounds like the <u>th</u> in <u>then</u>
Epsilon	Εε	Sounds like the <u>e</u> in <u>end</u>
Zeta	Ζζ	Sounds like the <u>z</u> in <u>zest</u>
Eta	Ηη	Sounds like the <u>e</u> in <u>olé</u>
Theta	Θθ	Sounds like the <u>th</u> in <u>thin</u>
Iota	Ιι	Sounds like the <u>i</u> in <u>ski</u>
Kappa	Κκ	Sounds like the <u>k</u> in <u>skit</u> Sounds like the <u>g</u> in <u>go</u>
Lambda	Λλ	Sounds like the <u>l</u> in <u>let</u>

Mu	Μμ	Sounds like the <u>m</u> in <u>met</u>
Nu	Νν	Sounds like the <u>n</u> in <u>net</u>
Xi	Ξξ	Sounds like the <u>ks</u> in <u>elks</u>
Omicron	Οο	Sounds like the <u>o</u> in <u>go</u>
Pi	Ππ	Sounds like the <u>p</u> in <u>spin</u> Sounds like the <u>b</u> in <u>bet</u>
Rho	Ρρ	Sounds like the <u>r</u> in <u>rest</u>
Sigma	Σσς	Sounds like the <u>s</u> in <u>set</u>
Tau	Ττ	Sounds like the <u>t</u> in <u>star</u> Sounds like the <u>d</u> in <u>den</u>
Upsilon	Υυ	Sounds like the <u>u</u> in <u>flu</u> Sounds like the <u>v</u> in <u>vet</u>
Phi	Φφφ	Sounds like the <u>ph</u> in <u>photo</u>
Chi	Χχ	Sounds like the <u>ch</u> in <u>loch</u>
Psi	Ψψ	Sounds like the <u>ps</u> in <u>steps</u>
Omega	Ωω	Sounds like the <u>o</u> in <u>go</u>

Alphabet

Name of the Letter	Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
Alpha	Aα
Beta	Bβ
Gamma	Γγ
Delta	Δδ
Epsilon	Εε
Zeta	Ζζ
Eta	Ηη
Theta	Θθ
Iota	Ιι
Kappa	Κκ
Lambda	Λλ
Mu	Μμ

Name of the Letter	Upper-Case and Lower-Case Forms
Nu	Νν
Xi	Ξξ
Omicron	Οο
Pi	Ππ
Rho	Ρρ
Sigma	Σσς
Tau	Ττ
Upsilon	Υυ
Phi	Φφ
Chi	Χχ
Psi	Ψψ
Omega	Ωω

Word	Gloss	Part of Speech	NT Freq.	Lesson
1. ἄββᾱ	father	Noun	3	1
2. ἄγω	I lead, bring, go	Verb	67	2
3. ὧδε	here	Adverb	61	2
4. ἐγώ	I	Pronoun	2666	2
5. ἡ γῆ	earth, land, soil	Noun	250	3
6. ἡ ζωή	life	Noun	135	3
7. ἡ θεά	goddess	Noun	1	3
8. ἡ ἀδικία	unrighteousness	Noun	25	4
9. ἡ ἀλήθεια	truth	Noun	109	4
10. καί	and, even, also	Conjunction	9161	4
11. εἰμί	I am	Verb	140	5
12. γεμίζω	I fill	Verb	8	5
13. λαμβάνω	I take, receive	Verb	258	5
14. ἔξω	outside	Adverb	63	5
15. πέμπω	I send	Verb	79	6
16. ὁ ἀνὴρ	man, husband	Noun	216	6
17. ἡ παραβολή	parable	Noun	50	6
18. ὁ διδάσκαλος	teacher	Noun	59	7
19. ὁ σταυρός	cross	Noun	27	7
20. ἡ γυνή	woman, wife	Noun	215	7
21. τεσσαράκοντα	forty	Number	22	7
22. ἔχω	I have, hold	Verb	708	8
23. ἡ ὁδός	way, road	Noun	101	8
24. ἡ ψυχή	soul, life	Noun	103	8
25. τὸ φῶς	light	Noun	73	8
26. χαῖρε / χαίρετε	hello/greetings	Interjection	5	9
27. ἔρρωσο / ἔρρωσθε	goodbye/farewell	Interjection	1	9
28. τί	what?	Interrogative Pronoun	80	9
29. τὸ ὄνομα	name	Noun	231	9
30. μοι	to me	Personal Pronoun	225	9
31. σοι	to you	Personal Pronoun	217	9
32. ὁ Ἰησοῦς	Jesus	Name	917	9
33. ἐστίν	he/she/it is	Verb	897	9
34. γινώσκω	I know	Verb	222	10
35. ἐγγίζω	I draw near, approach	Verb	42	10
36. λέγω	I say, speak	Verb	2354	10
37. ὁ ἄγγελος	messenger, angel	Noun	175	10
38. ὁ υἱός	son	Noun	377	10

39. ἡ ἀγάπη	love	Noun	116	10
40. ἅγιος -α -ον	holy	Adjective	233	10
41. ναί	yes	Particle	33	10
42. οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ	no, not	Particle	1606	10
43. οὐχί	no! (more emphatic)	Particle	54	10
44. ἀναγινώσκω	I read, read aloud	Verb	32	11
45. γράφω	I write	Verb	191	11
46. τὸ βιβλίον	scroll, book	Noun	34	11
47. τὸ ποτήριον	cup	Noun	31	11
48. πῶς	how?	Adverb	103	11
49. καλῶς	well	Adverb	37	11
50. κακῶς	badly, ill	Adverb	16	11
51. δέ	but, and, now	Conjunction	2792	12
52. ἀκούω	I hear, listen to	Verb	428	12
53. βλέπω	I look at, see	Verb	133	12
54. ὁ ἀδελφός	brother	Noun	343	12
55. ὁ θεός	God, god	Noun	1317	12
56. τὸ ἔργον	work, deed	Noun	169	12
57. τὸ τέκνον	child	Noun	99	12
58. βάλλω	I throw	Verb	122	13
59. φέρω	I carry	Verb	66	13
60. φιλέω	I love	Verb	25	13
61. ἡ ἀδελφή	sister	Noun	26	13
62. ἡ καρδιά	heart	Noun	156	13
63. ἡ φωνή	sound, voice	Noun	139	13
64. ἀγαθός -ή -όν	good	Adjective	102	13
65. κακός -ή -όν	bad, evil	Adjective	50	13
66. ὁ ἡ τό	the	Article	19867	13

Master Table of the Koine Greek Alphabet

Name	Greek Spelling of Name	Upper ¹ Case Form	Lower ¹ Case Form	Letter Sounds Like... ²	MWPS ³
alpha	ἄλφα	A	α	spa	ä
beta	βῆτα	B	β	vet	v ⁴
gamma	γάμμα	Γ	γ	ghost (gurgly/guttural) yet (in γε γι γει) ⁵ sing (in γγ γκ γξ γχ)	gh y η
delta	δέλτα	Δ	δ	then	th ⁶
epsilon	ἒ ψιλόν	E	ε	end	e
zeta	ζῆτα	Z	ζ	zest	z
eta	ῆτα	H	η	olé	ā
theta	θῆτα	Θ	θ	thin	th
iota	ἰῶτα	I	ι	ski	ē
kappa	κάππα	K	κ	skit (unaspirated - not kit) go (in γκ κκ)	k g
lambda	λάμβδα	Λ	λ	let	l
mu	μῦ	M	μ	met	m
nu	νῦ	N	ν	net	n
xi	ξῖ	Ξ	ξ	elks	ks
omicron	ὀ μικρόν	O	ο	go	ō
pi	πί	Π	π	spin (unaspirated - not pin) bet (in μπ)	p b
rho	ῥῶ	P	ρ	rest (trilled)	r
sigma	σίγμα	Σ	σ ζ ⁷	set ⁸	s
tau	ταῦ	T	τ	star (unaspirated - not tar) den (in ντ)	t d
upsilon	Ϝ ψιλόν	Υ	υ	flu (French u in du) ⁹ vet (only in αυ ευ ηυ)	~ü v
phi	φῖ	Φ	φ	photo	f
chi	χῖ	X	χ	loch	k
psi	ψῖ	Ψ	ψ	steps	ps
omega	ὦ μέγα	Ω	ω	go	ō

Koine Greek Digraphs and Vowel Combinations

Digraphs	Sounds Like...	MWPS ³
αι	end (= ε)	e
ει	ski (= ι)	ē
οι	flu (= υ)	~ü
ου	soup	ü
Vowel Combinations	Sounds Like...	MWPS
αυ	lava	äv
ευ	ever	ev
ηυ	nave	āv
υι	flu + ski	ü + ē

In Classical Greek the four digraphs and four vowel combinations listed above were all pronounced as diphthongs. A diphthong is the combination of two vowels, in which the sound begins as one vowel sound and glides toward another vowel sound. The **oi** in **coin** is an example of an English diphthong. In Classical Greek, for example, **αι** sounded somewhat like the **ai** in **aisle** and **ευ** somewhat like the **eu** in **feud**. By the time of Koine Greek these diphthongs had all reduced to simple digraph or vowel sounds.

Most Biblical Greek textbooks still refer to these as diphthongs and teach an Erasmian pronunciation (see page 1) that assigns them diphthong sounds. A few newer textbooks recognize them as digraphs because they teach a reconstructed Koine pronunciation (see page 1). Regardless, they are “vowel pairs” that determine syllabification and affect accentuation. If they have a breathing mark and/or accent mark in a word, the mark is always written over the second vowel in the pair. Note that the second vowel in all of them is **ι** or **υ**.

¹Until about the 9th or 10th century AD, only the upper-case letters or *majuscules* were used in writing. Later, the lower-case letters or *minuscules* were developed and are used in modern printed books. Focus on learning the lower-case letters first.

²Based on historical research, scholars have developed what they believe is a fairly accurate reconstruction of the pronunciation of Koine Greek. One of the best-known reconstructions is by Randall Buth. See his *Notes on the Pronunciation System of Koiné Greek* (<https://www.biblicallanguagecenter.com/wp-content/uploads/2012/08/Koine-Pronunciation-2012.pdf>). Pronunciation examples based on reconstruction can be found at KoineGreek.com (<https://www.koinegreek.com/pronunciation>) and Greek-Language.com (<https://greek-language.com/Alphabet.html>). The pronunciation system shown on this chart is adapted from a number of sources.

³Merriam-Webster Pronunciation Symbols. For a downloadable PDF document that explains the symbols, go to <https://merriam-webster.com/assets/mw/static/pdf/help/guide-to-pronunciation.pdf>

⁴Some scholars suggest that Beta should be pronounced as the **b** in **bet** when it comes after **μ** (Mu) and **ν** (Nu), i.e., in **μβ** and **νβ**.

⁵Some scholars suggest that the Gamma should also be pronounced as the **y** in **yet** when it comes before **υ** (Upsilon) and **η** (Eta), i.e., in **γυ** and **γη**.

⁶Delta probably did not have the **\th** sound until late in the Hellenistic/Koine stage. But since most reconstructions teach the sound as **\th** rather than **\d**, the **\th** pronunciation has been adopted in this course. Some scholars suggest that Delta should be pronounced as the **d** in **den** when it comes after **ν** (Nu), i.e., in **νδ**.

⁷Sigma has two forms. **ς** is called a “final Sigma” and is used only at the end of words. Elsewhere it is written as **σ**.

⁸Some scholars suggest that Sigma should be pronounced as the **z** in **zest** when it comes before **μ** (Mu) and **β** (Beta), i.e., in **σμ** and **σβ**.

⁹Scholars have various opinions about how Upsilon should be pronounced. The exact sound of the letter Upsilon **υ** and the digraph **οι** do not exist in English. This is the most difficult Greek letter sound for English speakers to pronounce. The sound might be equivalent to the German umlaut (**ü**) or the French **u** as in **du**. The **u** in **flu** is a sufficient approximation of the sound when pronounced with tightly rounded lips and the tongue touching the tops of lower front teeth. It is different from the digraph **ου** which is pronounced with less rounded lips and the tongue further back in the mouth lightly touching, or just behind, the lower front teeth.

The Koine Greek Alphabet Song

Sung to the tune of *Yankee Doodle Went to Town*

Adapted by Matthew Jones

KoineFoundations.com



Alpha, Beta, Gamma, Delta,
Epsilon and Zeta,
Eta, Theta, Iota, Kappa, Lambda.

This is easy!

Mu, Nu, Xi and Omicron,
Pi, Rho, Sigma, Tau,
Upsilon, and then four more!
Phi, Chi, Psi and Omega.



Yankee Doodle

US Traditional



Al - pha, Be - ta, Gam-ma, Del-ta, E - psi - lon, and Ze - ta, E - ta, The - ta, I-o-ta, Kap - pa,
Lamb - da. This is ea - sy! Mu, Nu, Xi, and O - mi - cron, Pi, Rho, Sig - ma,
Tav, U - psi - lon, and then four more! Phi, Chi, Psi, and O - me - ga.

Writing Practice Worksheet

Use this sheet to practice writing the alphabet, words, or phrases. Say what you write aloud as you write it.

Αα Ββ Γγ Δδ Εε Ζζ Ηη Θθ

Ιι Κκ Λλ Μμ Νν Ξξ Οο Ππ

Ρρ Σσς Ττ Υυ Φφ Χχ Ψψ Ωω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

A

α

E

ε

B

β

Z

ζ

Γ

γ

H

η

Δ

δ

Θ

θ

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

5

Name:	epsilon (<i>eh-psee-LONE</i>)
Sound:	e in end \e\
Type:	Vowel

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

1

Name:	alpha (<i>AHL-fah</i>)
Sound:	a in spa \ä\
Type:	Vowel

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

6

Name:	zeta (<i>ZAY-tah</i>)
Sound:	z in zest \z\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

2

Name:	beta (<i>VAY-tah</i>)
Sound:	v in vet \v\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

7

Name:	eta (<i>AY-tah</i>)
Sound:	e in olé \ā\
Type:	Vowel

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

3

Name:	gamma (<i>GHAM-mah</i>)
Sound:	gh in ghost \gh\ guttural y in yet \y\ (in γε γι γει) ng in sing \ŋ\ (in γγ γκ γξ γχ)
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

8

Name:	theta (<i>THAY-tah</i>)
Sound:	th in thin \th\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

4

Name:	delta (<i>THEL-tah</i>)
Sound:	th in then \th\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

I

I

N

V

K

K

Ξ

Ξ

Λ

Λ

O

O

M

μ

Π

Π

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

13

Name:	nu (<i>noo</i>)
Sound:	n in net \n\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

9

Name:	iota (<i>ee-OH-tah</i>)
Sound:	i in ski \ē\
Type:	Vowel

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

14

Name:	xi (<i>ksee</i>)
Sound:	ks in elks \ks\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

10

Name:	kappa (<i>KAHP-pah</i>)
Sound:	k in skit \k\ g in go \g\ (in γκ νκ)
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

15

Name:	omicron (<i>oh mee-KROHN</i>)
Sound:	o in go \ō\
Type:	Vowel

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

11

Name:	lambda (<i>LAHMY-thah</i>)
Sound:	l in let \l\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

16

Name:	pi (<i>pee</i>)
Sound:	p in spin \p\ b in bet \b\ (in πτ)
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

12

Name:	mu (<i>moo</i>)
Sound:	m in met \m\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

P

ρ

Φ

φ

Σ

σς

Χ

χ

Τ

τ

Ψ

ψ

Υ

υ

Ω

ω

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

21

Name:	phi (<i>fee</i>)
Sound:	ph in photo \f\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

17

Name:	rho (<i>roh</i>)
Sound:	r in rest \r\ trilled
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

22

Name:	chi (<i>khee</i>)
Sound:	ch in loch \k\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

18

Name:	sigma (<i>SEEGH-mah</i>)
Sound:	s in set \s\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

23

Name:	psi (<i>psee</i>)
Sound:	ps in steps \ps\
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

19

Name:	tau (<i>tahv</i>)
Sound:	t in star \t\ d in den \d\ (in vt)
Type:	Consonant

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

24

Name:	omega (<i>oh-MEH-ghah</i>)
Sound:	o in go \ō\
Type:	Vowel

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

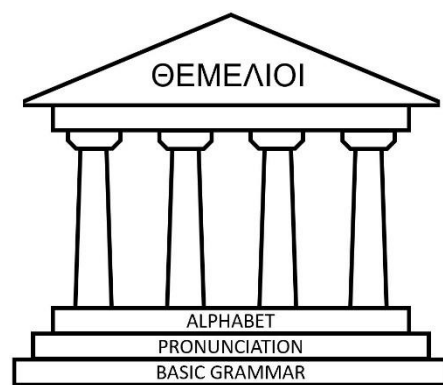
20

Name:	upsilon (<i>OO psee-LONE</i>)
Sound:	u in flu \ü\ v in vet \v\ (in au eu ηυ)
Type:	Vowel

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones

Purchaser is granted permission to photocopy this page for personal study or homeschool use.

© Copyright 2022 by Matthew Jones



<https://koinefoundations.com>